HP StorageWorks RAID Manager XP User's Guide

XP48
XP128
XP256
XP512
XP1024
XP12000

seventh edition (August 2004)

part number: T1610-96002

This guide describes HP StorageWorks RAID Manager XP (RM) and provides installation and configuration procedures, RM command usage and references, and troubleshooting instructions.

invent

Printed in the U.S.A.

HP StorageWorks Disk Array XP RAID Manager: User's Guide

seventh edition (August 2004)
part number: T1610-96002

Contents

About this guide

This guide describes HP StorageWorks RAID Manager XP (RM) and provides installation and configuration procedures, RM command usage and references, and troubleshooting instructions. It also provides configuration file examples and information about High Availability failover and failback, Fibre Channel addressing, and standard input (STDIN) file formats.

Intended audience

This guide is intended for use by system administrators who have expertise with storage systems and related software, including these topics:

- Data processing concepts
- Direct access storage device subsystems and their basic functions
- Disk arrays and RAID technology
- Operating system commands and utilities

Related documentation

HP provides the following related documentation:

- *HP StorageWorks Continuous Access XP: User's Guide*
- *HP StorageWorks Business Copy XP: User's Guide*
- *HP StorageWorks Command View XP for XP Disk Arrays: User Guide*

Conventions

This guide uses the following text conventions.

Figure 1	Blue text represents a cross-reference. For the online version of this guide, the reference is linked to the target.

www.hp.com	Underlined, blue text represents a website on the Internet. For the online version of this guide, the reference is linked to the target.
literal	Bold text represents literal values that you type exactly as shown, as well as key and field names, menu items, buttons, file names, application names, and dialog box titles.
variable	Italics indicates that you must supply a value. Italics is also used for manual titles.
`input/output`	Monospace font denotes user input and system responses, such as output and messages.
Example	Denotes an example of input or output. The display shown in this guide may not match your configuration exactly.
[ ]	Indicates an optional parameter.
{ }	Indicates that you must specify at least one of the listed options.
|	Separates alternatives in a list of options.

Getting help

If you still have questions after reading this guide, contact your HP service provider or access our website:

www.hp.com

HP technical support

In North America, call technical support at 1-800-652-6672, available 24 hours a day, 7 days a week.

Outside North America, call technical support at the nearest location. Telephone numbers for worldwide technical support are listed on the HP website under support:

http://h18006.www1.hp.com/storage/arraysystems.html

Be sure to have the following information available before calling:

- technical support registration number (if applicable)
- product serial numbers
- product model names and numbers
- applicable error messages
- operating system type and revision level
- detailed, specific questions

For continuous quality improvement, calls may be recorded or monitored.

HP storage website

For the most current information about HP StorageWorks XP products, visit the support website. Select the appropriate product or solution from this website:

http://h18006.www1.hp.com/storage/arraysystems.html

For information about product availability, configuration, and connectivity, consult your HP account representative.

HP authorized reseller

For the name of your nearest HP authorized reseller, you can obtain information by telephone:

United States	1-800-345-1518
Canada	1-800-263-5868
Or contact:	www.hp.com

Revision history

September 1999	OPEN-8 emulation added.
January 2000	Content extensively revised and reorganized.
September 2000	Content extensively revised.
February 2001	Added support of MPE/iX. Content significantly enhanced.
March 2001	Added **mkconf** command. Content enhanced.
November 2003	Added Oracle Data Validation. Added OpenVMS. Content significantly enhanced.
July 2004	General edit of content, layout, and language.General update to reflect recent changes. Modified installation procedure. Modified document to reflect HP12000 disk arrays. Added “Using RAID Manager with ‘user’ system privileges on a Windows 2000/2003 system.” Added HP StorageWorks LUN Security XP Extension disclaimer.

Warranty statement

HP warrants that for a period of ninety calendar days from the date of purchase, as evidenced by a copy of the invoice, the media on which the Software is furnished (if any) will be free of defects in materials and workmanship under normal use.

DISCLAIMER. EXCEPT FOR THE FOREGOING AND TO THE EXTENT ALLOWED BY LOCAL LAW, THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED TO YOU "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND, WHETHER ORAL OR WRITTEN, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. HP SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIMS ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, NON-INFRINGEMENT, TITLE, ACCURACY OF INFORMATIONAL CONTENT, AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some jurisdictions do not allow exclusions of implied warranties or conditions, so the above exclusion may not apply to you to the extent prohibited by such local laws. You may have other rights that vary from country to country, state to state, or province to province.

WARNING! **YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK.** HP DOES NOT WARRANT THAT THE FUNCTIONS CONTAINED IN THE SOFTWARE WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, OR THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED, VIRUS-FREE OR ERROR-FREE, OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE WILL BE CORRECTED. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE RESULTS AND PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE IS ASSUMED BY YOU. HP DOES NOT WARRANT OR MAKE ANY REPRESENTATIONS REGARDING THE USE OR THE RESULTS OF THE USE OF THE SOFTWARE OR RELATED DOCUMENTATION IN TERMS OF THEIR CORRECTNESS, ACCURACY, RELIABILITY, CURRENTNESS, OR OTHERWISE. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY HP OR HP'S AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVES SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY.

LIMITATION OF LIABILITY. EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT PROHIBITED BY LOCAL LAW, IN NO EVENT INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE WILL HP OR ITS SUBSIDIARIES, AFFILIATES, DIRECTORS, OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES, AGENTS OR SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR DIRECT, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, PUNITIVE OR OTHER DAMAGES (INCLUDING LOST PROFIT, LOST DATA, OR DOWNTIME COSTS), ARISING OUT OF THE USE, INABILITY TO USE, OR THE RESULTS OF USE OF THE SOFTWARE, WHETHER BASED IN WARRANTY, CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHER LEGAL THEORY, AND WHETHER OR NOT ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Your use of the Software is entirely at your own risk. Should the Software prove defective, you assume the entire cost of all service, repair or correction. Some jurisdictions do not allow the exclusion or limitation of liability for incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitation may not apply to you to the extent prohibited by such local laws.

NOTE. EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT ALLOWED BY LOCAL LAW, THESE WARRANTY TERMS DO NOT EXCLUDE, RESTRICT OR MODIFY, AND ARE IN ADDITION TO, THE MANDATORY STATUTORY RIGHTS APPLICABLE TO THE LICENSE OF THE SOFTWARE TO YOU; PROVIDED, HOWEVER, THAT THE CONVENTION ON CONTRACTS FOR THE INTERNATIONAL SALE OF GOODS IS SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIMED AND SHALL NOT GOVERN OR APPLY TO THE SOFTWARE PROVIDED IN CONNECTION WITH THIS WARRANTY STATEMENT.

HP StorageWorks LUN Security XP Extension disclaimer

HP StorageWorks LUN Security XP Extension provides the ability to place logical volumes into secure states. In these secure states, data on the volumes can not be modified until the retention time specified when the volume is placed in the secured state has elapsed. TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW, UNLESS EXPRESSLY PROVIDED OTHERWISE UNDER WRITTEN AGREEMENT BETWEEN HP AND CUSTOMER, HP WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF PROFITS AND LOSS OF DATA) REGARDLESS OF WHETHER SUCH DAMAGES ARE BASED ON TORT, WARRANTY, CONTRACT OR ANY OTHER LEGAL THEORY, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES, ARISING OUT OF ANY PERFORMANCE OF OR IN FURTHERANCE OF UNLOCKING OR OTHERWISE UNSECURING AT THE REQUEST OF THE CUSTOMER DATA THAT HAS BEEN SECURED USING HP StorageWorks LUN Security XP Extension BEFORE THE RETENTION TIME HAS EXPIRED.

1

RAID Manager description

HP StorageWorks RAID Manager XP (RM) enables you to perform operations with HP StorageWorks Continuous Access XP (CA) and HP StorageWorks Business Copy XP (BC) by issuing commands from a server host to the disk array. The RM software interfaces with the system software and high availability (HA) software on the host, as well as with the BC and CA software on the disk array.

This manual provides instructions for installing and using the RM software on various versions of UNIX, Microsoft Windows, and MPE/iX. Versions of RM are available for several other operating systems as well.

RAID Manager features and environment

RAID Manager lets you issue Business Copy (BC) and Continuous Access (CA) commands from a host. These commands can be issued from the command line or built into a script (for example, a ksh, perl script, or DOS batch file).

You can execute a large number of BC and CA commands in a short period of time by using scripts containing RM commands. In MPE/iX, you can create POSIX command scripts. For more information about scripting, see “Using RAID Manager commands in scripts” (page 59).

RM software consists of the following:

- RM instances (daemons)
- configuration files
- BC/CA commands and shell scripts

RM uses these entities:

- command devices
- BC/CA volumes

RM runs in these (and other) environments:

UNIX	RM runs on a UNIX host as the HORCM daemon.
Windows NT/2000/2003	RM runs on a Windows NT/2000/2003 host as a service.
MPE/iX	RM runs in MPE/iX as a job stream. See Appendix E, “Porting notice for MPE/iX” .
OpenVMS	RM runs on OpenVMS as a detatched process. See Appendix F, “Porting notice for OpenVMS” .

Continuous Access (CA)

CA copies data from a local HP XP disk array to one or more remote HP XP disk arrays. CA may be used for data duplication, migration, and offsite backup.

RM displays CA volume or group information and allows you to perform CA operations through either the command line, a script (UNIX), or a batch file (Windows).

Business Copy (BC)

BC software allows you to create and maintain up to nine copies of data on the local disk array. These copies can be used for backup, data duplication, or testing.

BC duplicate volumes are created within the same disk array at hardware speeds.

RM displays BC volume or group information and allows you to perform BC operations through either the command line, a script (UNIX), or a batch file (Windows).

When you use CA to make a duplicate copy of a volume on a remote disk array, and then make up to 9 internal BC copies on the remote disk array from that volume, you can effectively create up to 10 copies of a logical volume on the remote disk array.

RAID Manager instances

Each copy of RM is known as an RM instance. Instances are local or remote and can run on the same host or different hosts. Two RM instances are typically required to manage a BC or CA pair/group.

Local instance	The RM instance currently being configured/used, or the instance to which commands are issued. Local instances link to remote instances by using UDP socket services.
Remote instance	The RM instance that the local instance communicates with, as configured in the **HORCM_INST** section of an RM instance configuration file. The **HORCM_INST** section defines how device groups link to remote RM instances.

RM also provides failover and operation commands that can support mutual hot standby in cooperation with industry-standard failover software.

There are four possible RM topologies:

- **One host connected to one disk array**

  If you are using one host, both RM instances are located on the same host.

- **One host connected to two or more disk arrays**

  By connecting the host to two disk arrays you can implement disaster recovery by maintaining duplicate data on two different disk arrays. When you choose this option, the host Logical Volume Manager must not be able to see both sides of the same BC or CA pair or it will become confused.

- **Two or more hosts connected to one disk array**

  If you are using two hosts, one RM instance is located on each host. Connecting two hosts to one disk array allows you to maintain copies of the data that are controlled by independent hosts, allowing primary volumes (P-VOLs) to be used by one host while secondary volumes

(S-VOLs) are used by the other host (for example, as a backup server) for testing or data duplication.

- **Two or more hosts connected to two or more disk arrays**

  By connecting two hosts to two or more disk arrays, you can implement disaster recovery by maintaining duplicate data at a remote location. Two hosts connected to two disk arrays allows the most flexible CA disaster recovery plan. The remote and local sets of data are administered by different hosts, guarding against host failure. This is the configuration used by HA software, such as HP MetroCluster in conjunction with RAID Manager's **horctakeover** command, which allows for both failover and failback.

RAID Manager command device

You must designate a special volume on the disk array as the RAID Manager command device. The command device accepts BC or CA control operations. These are seen as in-band SCSI read and write commands, and are executed by the disk array. The volume designated as the command device is used only by RM and is blocked from other user access.

The command device can be any OPEN-x device that the host can access. An RM command device uses a minimum of 16 MB of space. The remaining volume space is reserved for RM and its utilities. You cannot use Logical Unit Size Expansion (LUSE) volumes as a command device; however, you can use the Volume Size Configuration (VSC) feature of Command View XP or LUN Configuration Manager XP to make custom volumes as small as 36 MB.

Caution *Be certain that there is no data on a volume you select as a command device. Any data on the volume you select becomes inaccessible.*

Caution *MPE/iX systems will need a dummy volume set. Create this through the VOLUTIL utility program and scratch the volume set before converting to a command device.*

RM issues SCSI read/write commands to the command device. If the command device fails for any reason, all BC and CA commands terminate abnormally and the host cannot issue commands to the disk array.

To avoid data loss and system downtime, you can designate an alternate command device. Then, should RM receive an error notification in reply to a request, RM automatically switches to the alternate command device.

Manually switching command devices

To avoid having commands terminate during a failure, RM has a command device alternating function, which allows you to manually switch devices.

- **How to define alternate command devices**

  You can define two or more command devices in the **HORCM_CMD** section of the configuration definition file. If you specify two or more devices on the same line, they are recognized as alternating control devices for the same array. See "HORCM_CMD section" (page 47)(page 47).

- **When the command device switches**

  When RM receives an error notification in reply from the operating system, the command device switches to an alternate device.

  You can also alternate command devices manually by issuing an RM command. See "horcctl" (page 105).

- **When to issue the alternate command device command**

  Issue the command to alternate command devices before the command device is about to be blocked due to online maintenance.

  After completing online maintenance, reissue the alternate command device command. The first command device is then activated.

- **How RM handles multiple command devices at startup**

  If only one (of several) command devices from the configuration definition file is available at RM startup, the startup log will contain a warning.

  You must confirm that RM has started without warnings in the startup log (and that **horcctl –c** will change the command device).

2

Installation

This chapter describes how to install and configure RAID Manager in several environments.

System and disk array requirements

RM requires that BC or CA be installed on the disk array. To determine the requirements for each product, see the following manuals:

HP StorageWorks Business Copy XP: User's Guide

HP StorageWorks Continuous Access XP: User's Guide

Using RAID Manager with Continuous Access

Ask your HP representative to configure the disk arrays for CA functions. Make sure of the following:

- The disk arrays have CA license keys installed.
- The sender ports (Initiator for Fibre Channel, RCP for ESCON) and receiver ports (RCU-Target for Fibre Channel and LCP for ESCON) are configured on the local and remote disk arrays.
- The path between the master and remote control units (CUs) is established by using Continuous Access.
- Bidirectional swap is enabled between the primary and secondary volumes. Verify that at least two physical links exist in each direction.
- One or more RM command devices are set, using Command View XP or Remote Control XP software. If neither Command View XP nor LUN Configuration Manager XP is available, the HP representative can configure devices by using the disk arrays' internal service processors (SVPs).

Using RAID Manager with Business Copy

Ask your HP representative to configure the disk array for BC functions. Make sure of the following:

- The disk array has the BC license key installed.
- One or more RM command devices are set, using Command View XP or Remote Control XP software. If neither Command View XP nor LUN Configuration Manager XP is available, the HP representative can configure devices by using the disk array's (SVP).

Getting ready to install RAID Manager

You install and configure of RM with assistance from the HP representative, if necessary.

Before you install and configure RM, your HP representative must complete these preliminary steps:

1. Plan the mapping of the BC and CA disk volume pairs. Determine which volumes to access.
2. Map the disk array interfaces to be used for each host.

Note: After completing the preliminary steps above, installing and configuring RM consists of the following tasks. Task details appear in the subsequent sections.

- **Installing RAID Manager**

  Install the RM software on the hosts.

- **Configuring the services and hosts files**

  Add a service name/number to the host services file (for example, **/etc/services**) for each instance of RM. Configure the hosts file.

- **Setting up the RM instance configuration file**

  Configure paths to one or more RM command devices for each host. All hosts and RM instances can use the same command device for a given disk array. However, it is recommended that each host have a unique command device.

- **Starting the instances**

  This procedure also includes setting environment variables needed to issue commands to the desired instance of RM.

Installing RAID Manager on UNIX systems

Follow the steps specific to your UNIX system to install RM.

Note: If RM is already installed and running on a host, ensure that all active instances are shut down before performing the installation.

1. Place the CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Identify the CD-ROM device file to be substituted in the **mount** commands below (for example, **/dev/dsk/c1t1d0**).
3. Log in as a root user.

   su root

4. Create a CD-ROM mount directory and make it accessible to all users.

   mkdir –p /cdrom
   chmod 777 /cdrom

5. Mount the CD-ROM.

HP-UX

For HP-UX, use the **mount** command with the **–f** option:

mount –f cdfs –o ro /dev/dsk/c1t1d0 /cdrom

Sun Solaris

For Sun Solaris, use the **mount** command with the **–f** option:

mount –f hsfs –o ro /dev/dsk/c0t6d0s2 /cdrom/cdrom0

In most cases, Sun Solaris automatically mounts the CD-ROM. If not, use this **mount** command:

mount –f hsfs –o ro /vol/dev/dsk/c0t6d0/cdrom0 /cdrom/cdrom0

IBM AIX

For IBM AIX, use the **mount** command with the **–rv** option:

mount –rv cdrfs /dev/cd0 /cdrom

6. Choose a file system for the RM software. You need about 5 MB of disk space. The standard and recommended file system to load the software to is **/opt**.

7. From the **/opt** directory, use **cpio** to unpack the archives. Create the **HORCM** directory if it does not already exist.

   cd /opt
   mkdir HORCM (*choose the next command according to your OS*)
   cat /cdrom/LINUX/rmxp* | cpio –idum (*or*)
   cat /cdrom/AIX/rmxp* | cpio –idum (*or*)
   cat /cdrom/DIGITAL/rmxp* | cpio –idum (*or*)
   cat /cdrom/HP_UX/rmxp* | cpio -idum *(or)*
   cat /cdrom/SOLARIS/rmxp* | cpio –idum

8. Change the directory to **/opt/HORCM** and verify the contents.

   cd /opt/HORCM
   ls

Example

```
etc horcmuninstall.sh  log0   usr
horcminstall.sh        log    log1
```

9. Create a link from the root directory to the **/opt/HORCM** directory.

   ln –s /opt/HORCM /HORCM

10. Run the RM Installer.

    /HORCM/horcminstall.sh

    This script creates symbolic links in the **/usr/bin** directory for RM commands.

When you complete the installation, create all required configuration files.

Installing RAID Manager on Windows systems

1. Boot the Windows server and log in with administrator access.
2. Insert the RAID Manager CD in the CD-ROM drive.
3. Under the **Start** menu, select **Run**.
4. When the Run window opens, enter **D:\WIN_NT\setup.exe** (where **D** is the letter of your CD-ROM drive) in the Open dialog box and click **OK**.
5. The installation wizard opens. Follow the on-screen instructions to install the RM software.

Installing RAID Manager on MPE/iX systems

Note: If RM is already installed and running on this system, ensure that all active instances are shut down before performing the installation.

1. Update your system with MPE/iX 6.5, Power Patch 1, which includes OS patch MPEKXU3.
2. Install the MPE/iX RAID Manager Patch ID **XPMLXD9**.
3. Verify that at least one logical volume on the disk array is configured to function as a command device.

Caution *MPE/iX systems will need a dummy volume set. Create this through the VOLUTIL utility program and scratch the volume set before converting to a command device.*

4. Run the POSIX shell from CI and change your working directory to the temporary directory **/tmp/raidmgr**.

   ```
   : Sh
   ```

   ```
   Shell/iX> cd /tmp/raidmgr
   ```

5. Execute the install script

   ```
   Shell/iX> ./RMinstsh
   ```

   This install script requests that you specify a POSIX directory where the RAID Manager executables and log files will be placed. The standard and recommended POSIX directory is **/opt**.

   This script creates the necessary POSIX directories. All relevant files are placed under the directory **/opt/HORCM**. The RAID Manager executables are placed under **/opt/HORCM/usr/bin**. A symbolic link (**/HORCM**) that points to **/opt/HORCM** is created under the root directory.

6. Once the above installation completes successfully, create the device files:

```
Shell/iX> mknod /dev/ldev99  c  31 99   ← LDEV devices
Shell/iX> mknod /dev/ldev100 c  31 100
Shell/iX> mknod /dev/cmddev  c  31 102 ← Command device
```

   The 31 in the above example is called the major number. The 99, 100, 102 are called minor numbers. For RAID Manager, always specify **31** as the major number. The minor number should correspond to the LDEV numbers as configured in sysgen. Create device files for all the LDEVs configured through sysgen and for the command device. The device link file for the command device should be called **/dev/cmddev**.

7. Add a service entry for each RM instance in the **SERVICES.NET.SYS** file.

   horcm0 6100g #RaidManager instance 0
   horcm1 6100g #RaidManager instance 1

8. Each host running an instance should be listed in the **HOSTS.NET.SYS** file. This allows you to refer to any remote hosts by name as well as by IP address. If a domain name server (DNS) manages host name resolution, then **HOSTS.NET.SYS** is not necessary.

9. Create RM instance configuration files for each instance. This file defines the relationships between RM instances and the link between a volume and an RM instance. When you create an RM configuration file, use this naming convention:

   horcm#.conf

Example `horcm1.conf`

where the instance # in this case is **1**.

The configuration file has four sections:

HORCM_MON (page 44)
HORCM_CMD (page 47)
HORCM_DEV (page 50)
HORCM_INST (page 52)

An example **horcm.conf** file can be found in the **/HORCM/etc** directory. You can make copies of this file to create a different configuration file for each RM instance. Place them in the **/etc** directory.

You will have to start RAID Manager without a description for HORCM_DEV and HORCM_INST because the target ID and LUN are not yet known. After RAID Manager is up and running, you can find the target ID and LUN by using the **raidscan –find** command.

10. Create a RAID Manager job for each RM instance in the group **PUB.SYS**. A sample job called **jhorcm** is in the **/etc** directory.

Example:

```
!job jraidmr1, manager.sys;pri=cs
!setvar TZ "PST8PDT"
!xeq sh.hpbin.sys '/HORCM/usr/bin/horcmstart.sh 1'
!eoj
```

The above example will start RAID Manager instance 1.In the example, the time zone variable (TZ) has to be set differently for each time zone.

11. Start the RAID Manager daemon by streaming the job.

```
: stream jraidmr1.pub.sys
```

Verify that the job is running by executing the **SHOWJOB** command:

```
:SHOWJOB
JOBNUM  STATE IPRI JIN  JLIST    INTRODUCED  JOB NAME
#S2     EXEC        20  20       THU  5:29P  MANAGER.SYS
#J15    EXEC        10S LP       FRI  5:08P  JRAIDMR1,MANAGER.SYS
#J16    EXEC        10S LP       FRI  5:08P  JRAIDMR2,MANAGER.SYS
```

12. Get the physical mapping of the available LDEVs to fill in the HORCM_DEV and HORCM_INST section of the **horcm1.conf** file. Invoke the shell and change your working directory to **/HORCM/usr/bin** and execute:

```
:sh
Shell/iX>  cd /HORCM/usr/bin
Shell/iX>  export HORCMINST=1
Shell/iX>  ls /dev/* | ./raidscan -find

DEVICE_FILE   UID  S/F PORT   TARG  LUN   SERIAL  LDEV  PROD_ID
/dev/cmddev    0    S  CL1-D    1    0     35393    22  OPEN-3-CM
/dev/ldev407   0    S  CL1-E    8    0     35393   263  OPEN-3
/dev/ldev408   0    S  CL1-E    9    0     35393   264  OPEN-3
/dev/ldev409   0    S  CL1-E   10    0     35393   265  OPEN-3
/dev/ldev410   0    S  CL1-E   11    0     35393   266  OPEN-3
/dev/ldev411   0    S  CL1-E   12    0     35393   267  OPEN-3
/dev/ldev412   0    S  CL1-E   13    0     35393   268  OPEN-3
```

13. Now fill in the HORCM_DEV and HORCM_INST in **/etc/horcm#.conf** files.

Sample Configuration for Instance 1:

```
#
#/*************************For HORCM_MON*****************************/
HORCM_MON
#ip_address        service        poll(10ms)     timeout(10ms)
NONE                horcm0       1000              3000
#/************************** For HORCM_CMD**************************/
HORCM_CMD
#dev_name                dev_name                dev_name
/dev/cmddev0
#/************************** For HORCM_DEV**************************/
HORCM_DEV
#dev_group        dev_name        port#     TargetID      LU#       MU#
VG01              oradb1          CL1-E         8           0
VG02              oradb2          CL1-E         9           0         0
#/************************* For HORCM_INST *************************/
HORCM_INST
#dev_group        ip_address      service
VG01              HSTB            horcm1
VG02              HSTC            horcm1
```

14. Shut down the RAID Manager daemon within the shell and the current working directory **/HORCM/usr/bin**.

```
Shell/iX>  ./horcmshutdown.sh 1
```

Restart the RAID Manager job using the completed RM configuration file:

```
: stream jraidmr1.pub.sys
```

For additional information, see Appendix E, Porting notice for MPE/iX (page 345) (page 345).

Installing RAID Manager on OpenVMS systems

Privileges for using RAID Manager

- A user account for RAID Manager must have the same privileges as "SYSTEM" that can use the SCSI class driver and Mailbox driver directly. However, some OpenVMS system administrators may not allow RAID Manager to run from the system account (equivalent to root on UNIX). In this case, create another account on the system, such as "RMadmin" that has privileges the equivalent of "SYSTEM."
- RAID Manager uses the Mailbox driver to enable communication between the RAID Manager command and HORCM. So, the RAID Manager command and HORCM must have the same privileges.

  If the RAID Manager command and HORCM execute with different privileges (as different users), then the RAID Manager command will hang or be unable to attach to HORCM because the RAID Manager command and HORCM will be denied the ability to communicate through the Mailbox.

RAID Manager has a file for installing the following PCSI (PolyCenter Software Installation) file:

HP-AXPVMS-RMXP-V0112-0-1.PCSI

RAID Manager also requires that the logical name **sys$posix_root** exist on the system. Therefore, you must define **sys$posix_root** before installing RAID Manager.

It is recommended that the you define the following in LOGIN.COM before RM installation:

```
$ DEFINE/TRANSLATION=(CONCEALED,TERMINAL)
SYS$POSIX_ROOT  "Device:[directory]"
$ DEFINE DCL$PATH SYS$POSIX_ROOT:[horcm.usr.bin],
SYS$POSIX_ROOT:[horcm.etc]
$ DEFINE/TABLE=LNM$PROCESS_DIRECTORY
LNM$TEMPORARY_MAILBOX LNM$GROUP
$ DEFINE DECC$ARGV_PARSE_STYLE ENABLE
$ SET PROCESS/PARSE_STYLE=EXTENDED
```

In the above defines, Device:[directory] is the SYS$POSIX_ROOT.

To install RAID Manager on an OpenVMS system:

Install RAID Manager by using the following PCSI (PolyCenter Software Installation) file, .

HP-AXPVMS-RMXP-V0115-2-1.PCSI

1. Insert and mount the installation media.
2. Execute the following command.

```
$ PRODUCT INSTALL RMXP
/source=Device:[PROGRAM.RM.OVMS]/LOG -
  _$ /destination=SYS$POSIX_ROOT:[000000]
```

   where Device:[PROGRAM.RMOVMS] is where file HP-AXPVMS-RMXP-V0115-2-1.PCSI exists.

3. Confirm the installation:

```
$ raidqry -h
Model  : Raid-Manager-XP/OpenVMS
Ver&Rev: 01.15.02
:
:
```

For additional information, see Appendix F, Porting notice for OpenVMS (page 355).

Configuring services and host files

Configuring RM consists of editing the services and host files on the hosts that run RM instances.

UNIX

The services and host files are contained in this directory:

/etc

Windows NT/2000/2003

The services and host files are contained in this directory:

%systemroot%\system32\drivers\etc

OpenVMS

The services files are contained in this directory:

SYS$SYSROOT:[000000.TCPIP$ETC]SERVICES.DAT

The host files are contained in this directory:

SYS$SYSROOT:[SYSEXE]HOST.DAT

MPE/iX

The services and host files are contained in the MPE group directory:

NET.SYS

Services file configuration

Each BC and CA pair has a primary volume (P-VOL), the volume that contains the data to be copied, and a secondary volume (S-VOL), the volume that receives the data from the primary volume. Each of these volumes is linked to at least one instance of RM for the purpose of pair creation, suspension, and deletion. Each instance of RM can manage multiple volumes (on up to four arrays) and manage either P-VOLs or S-VOLs. See “Setting Up the RM instance configuration file” (page 41).

Example Instance 0 of RM is linked to the P-VOL for pairs a, b, and c. Instance 1 is linked to the S-VOL for pairs a, b, and c. To create, suspend, or delete pair a, both RM instances would communicate and cooperate.

Instances can be on the same or different host systems. The host that is running the instance must have access to the volumes to which it is linked and have access to a disk array command device for the array.

To configure the services file:

1. Edit the **services** file on each system.
2. Add a **udp** service entry for each RM instance that runs on the host and each RM instance referenced in the configuraiton file. The service number selected must be unique to the **services** file and in the range of 1024 to 65535.

Example

horcm0	**11000/udp**	**#RaidManager instance 0**
horcm1	**11001/udp**	**#RaidManager instance 1**

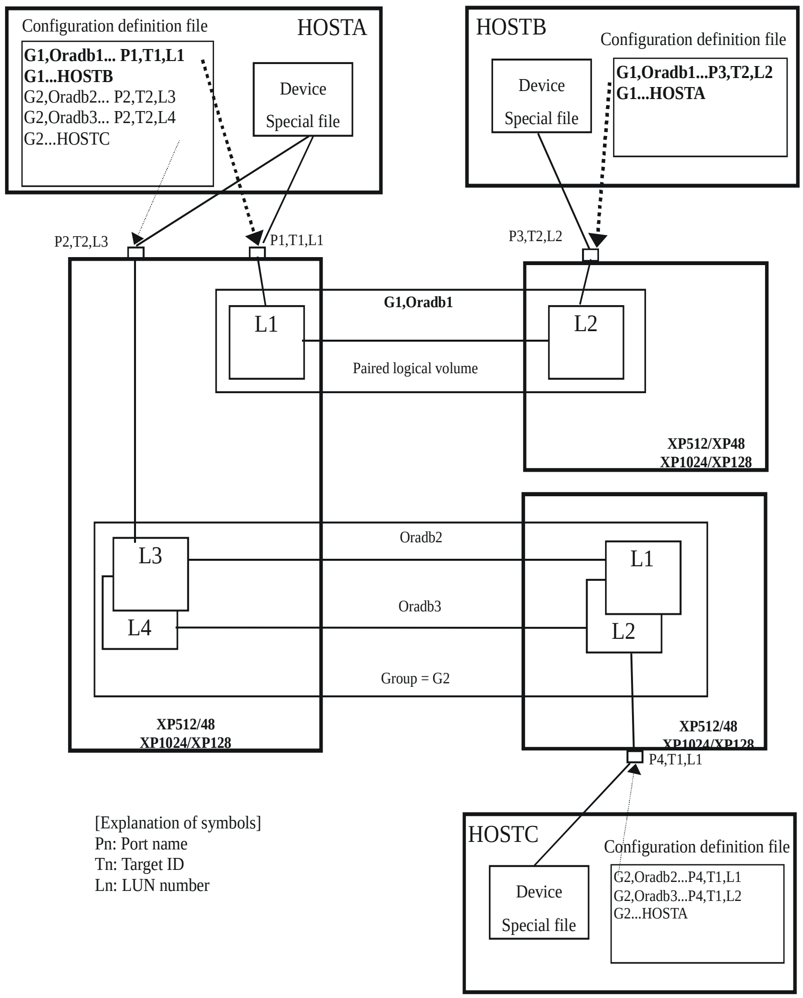
Hosts file configuration

Each host running an RM instance should be configured in the **hosts** file (for example, **/etc/hosts**). This lets you refer to any remote host by either its name or IP address.

If DNS (domain name server) manages host name resolution on your network, **hosts** file editing is not necessary.

Paired volume configuration

Users describe the connection between physical volumes used by the servers and the paired logical (named) volumes (and the names of the remote servers connected to the volumes) in a configuration definition file. See the figure below.



Setting Up the RM instance configuration file

The RM instance configuration file defines the link between a volume and an RM instance. This file also defines the relationships between RM instances and between the physical and logical names for volumes. You must create a configuration file for each RM instance.

When you create an RM configuration file, follow this naming convention, where *instance* is the instance number:

horcm*instance***.conf**

Example `horcm0.conf`

As previously stated, the configuration file has four sections:

HORCM_MON (page 44)
HORCM_CMD (page 47)
HORCM_DEV (page 50)
HORCM_INST (page 52)

You can use the **mkconf** command to create a configuration file. See mkconf (page 125) for usage information.

If the level of detail provided in the following pages is not sufficient, ask your HP representative to consult the HP internal document:

RAID Manager XP Basic Specifications

Configuration file parameters

The configuration file contains all parameters and values for a RM instance. The following table lists the constraints on various configuration file parameters.

Parameter	Default Value	Type	Limit
IP_address	*None*	Character string	63 characters
host_name	*None*	Character string	31 characters
service_name or *service_number*	*None*	Character string or numeric value	15 characters
poll_value (10 ms increments)	**1000**	Numeric value	None
timeout_value (10 ms increments)	**3000**	Numeric value	None
device_name for HORCM_DEV	*None*	Character string	31 characters
dev_group	*None*	Character string	31 characters
port	*None*	Character string	31 characters
target_ID	*None*	Numeric value	7 characters
LUN	*None*	Numeric value	7 characters
mirror_unit	**0**	Numeric value	7 characters
RM_group	*None*	Character string	31 characters
dev_name for HRCM_CMD	*None*	Character string	63 characters

For examples of configuration files, see Appendix A, "Configuration file examples" (page 257).

HP-UX

An example **horcm.conf** file can be found in the **/HORCM/etc** directory.

Windows NT/2000/2003

An example **horcm.conf** file can be found in the **C:\HORCM\etc** directory.

MPE/iX

See Appendix E, Porting notice for MPE/iX (page 345).

Open VMS

See Appendix F, Porting notice for OpenVMS (page 355).

HORCM_MON section

Syntax

HORCM_MON
{ *host_name* | *IP_address* } { *service_name* | *service_number* } *poll_value* *timeout_value* }

host_name	Name of the host on which this RM instance runs.
IP_address	IP address of the host on which this RM instance runs. Specify *NONE* when two or more network cards are installed in the server, or several networks (subnets) are configured, and you want to use this RM feature to listen on all networks.
service_name	Service name that was configured in the host services file.
service_number	Service number that was configured in the host services file.
poll_value	Specifies a monitoring interval for paired volumes. By making this interval longer, the RM daemon load is reduced, but it may take longer to notice a change in pair status. If this interval is set to **–1**, paired volumes are not monitored. A value of **–1** should be specified when two or more instances of RM run on the same machine and one is already monitoring the pair.
timeout_value	Specifies the remote server communication timeout period.

Description

The **HORCM_MON** section describes the host name or IP address and the port number (and the paired volume error monitoring interval) of the local host.

Examples

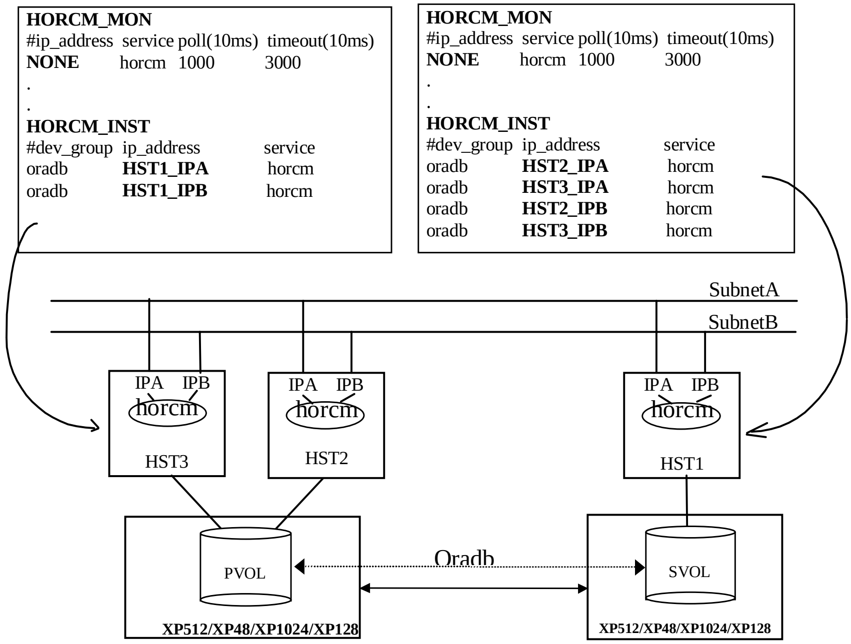
HORCM_MON
blue   horcm1   1000   3000

The RM instance is running on system blue with service name horcm1, a poll value of 10 seconds, and a timeout value of 30 seconds.

HORCM_MON
NONE   horcm1   1000   3000

The RM instance is running on system NONE, indicating two or more network cards are installed in the server, or several networks (subnets) are configured, and the RM listens on all networks. The service name is horcm1, a poll value of 10 seconds, and a timeout value of 30 seconds.

The **raidqry –r** *group* command executed on each host allows the user to examine the multiple network configurations. The following figure shows that the volume group known as **oradb** is controlled from the right side of the diagram by host HST1 (using either subnet A or B) and from the left side of the diagram by either HST2 or HST3 (using either subnet A or B).


HORCM_MON
#ip_address service poll(10ms) timeout(10ms)
NONE horcm 1000 3000
.
.
HORCM_INST
#dev_group ip_address service
oradb HST1_IPA horcm
oradb HST1_IPB horcm
HORCM_MON
#ip_address service poll(10ms) timeout(10ms)
NONE horcm 1000 3000
.
.
HORCM_INST
#dev_group ip_address service
oradb HST2_IPA horcm
oradb HST3_IPA horcm
oradb HST2_IPB horcm
oradb HST3_IPB horcm
SubnetA
SubnetB
IPA IPB
horcm
HST3
IPA IPB
horcm
HST2
IPA IPB
horcm
HST1
PVOL
Oradb
SVOL
XP512/XP48/XP1024/XP128
XP512/XP48/XP1024/XP128

HORCM_CMD section

Syntax

HORCM_CMD
command_device [*command_device*] . . .

Description

The **HORCM_CMD** section defines the disk devices RM uses to communicate with the disk array. When a RM command is initiated, command data is written to the special disk array command device. The disk array reads this data and carries out the appropriate actions.

Multiple command devices can be defined in this section of the configuration file to provide alternate command devices and paths in the event of failure.

It is recommended that each host has a unique command device. A command device should not be accessed by more than one host. Multiple instances on the same host can use the same command device.

To configure command devices, use LUN Configuration Manager. If LUN Configuration Manager is not available, an HP representative can configure the command devices by using the internal disk array service processor (SVP).

Examples

HP-UX

HORCM_CMD
/dev/rdsk/c2t3d0 /dev/rdsk/c6t2d4

This example defines two device files as paths to a command device. These devices can be pvlinks to the same volume on the disk array, or may be different command devices. Placing the second command device on the same line implies that it is an alternate within the same array.

HORCM_CMD
#unitID0 (Array 1)
/dev/rdsk/c1t3d5
#unitID1 (Array 2)
/dev/rdsk/c2t3d5

This HP-UX example shows multiple disk arrays connected to the host. One RM instance can control multiple disk arrays. To enable this feature, the different command devices have to be specified on different lines. RM uses unit IDs to control multiple disk arrays. A device group can span multiple disk arrays (sync-CA only). The unit ID must be appended for every volume device name in the **HORCM_DEV** section, as shown in the following figure.

```
HORCM_MON
#ip_address          service        poll (10ms)   timeout (10ms)
HST1                 horcm          1000          3000

HORCM_CMD
#unitID 0... (seq#30014)
#dev_name            dev_name       dev_name
/dev/rdsk/c0t0d0    /dev/rdsk/c0t0d1
#unitID 1... (seq#30015)
#dev_name            dev_name       dev_name
/dev/rdsk/c1t0d0

HORCM_DEV
#dev_group           dev_name       port#         TargetID  LU#   MU#
oradb                oradb1         CL1-A               3     1   0
oradb                oradb2         CL1-A               3     1   1
oralog               oralog1        CL1-A               5     0
oralog               oralog2        CL1-A1              5     0
oralog               oralog3        CL1-A1              5     1

HORCM_INST
#dev_group           ip_address     service
oradb                HST2           horcm
oradb                HST3           horcm
oralog               HST3           horcm
```

Windows NT/2000/ 2003

HORCM_CMD
\\.\PHYSICALDRIVE3

This example shows the path to a shared command device in Windows.

\\.\Volume{GUID}

This example shows the use of a Volume GUID for the command device in Windows.

MPE/iX See Appendix E, Porting notice for MPE/iX (page 345).

OpenVMS See Appendix F, Porting notice for OpenVMS (page 355).

HORCM_DEV Section

Syntax **HORCM_DEV**
device_group device_name port target_ID LUN [*mirror_unit*]

device_group	Each device group contains one or more volumes. This parameter gives you the capability to act on a group of volumes with one RM command. The device group can be any user-defined name up to 31 characters in length.
device_name	User-defined and unique to the instances using the device groups. It can be up to 31 characters in length and is a logical name that can be used instead of the physical Port/TID/LUN/MU# designation.
port	Disk array I/O port through which the volume is configured to be accessed. Port specification is not case sensitive (CL1-A= cl1-a= CL1-a= cl1-A).
target_ID	SCSI/Fibre target ID assigned to the volume.
LUN	Decimal logical unit number assigned to the volume.
mirror_unit	Use only if you are making multiple BC copies of a P-VOL. The mirror unit is a number ranging from 0 to 2. If left blank, as would be the case for CA, the default value becomes 0. This number is not a count of the number of copies being made. It is a label for RM to keep track of the different delta tables between one P-VOL and multiple S-VOLs. The mirror unit value should only be listed in the definition of a BC P-VOL.

Description The **HORCM_DEV** section describes the physical volumes corresponding to the paired volume names. Each volume listed in **HORCM_DEV** is defined on a separate line.

Example

HORCM_DEV
group1 g1–d1 CL1–A 12 1 0

This example shows a volume defined in device group1 known as device g1–d1. It is accessible through disk array unit 0 and I/O port CL1-A. The SCSI target ID is 12, the LUN is 1, and the BC mirror unit number is 0.

You can use RM to control multiple disk arrays with one RM instance by specifying the unit ID appended to the port. This example refers to the example in the HORCM_CMD section (page 47).

HORCM_DEV
group1 g1_d1 CL1–A 12 0
group2 g2 –d1 CL1–A1 12 0

This example shows that the volume pair with the device name g2–d1 resides on disk array unit 1 while the volume pair with device name g1–d1 resides on disk array unit 0.

Tip In the case of Fibre Channel, if the host reports a different target ID and LU# than **raidscan**, use the **raidscan** value.

Related information To see configuration file examples, and to see how devices belonging to different unit IDs are configured, see Appendix A, Configuration file examples (page 257).

HORCM_INST section

Syntax

HORCM_INST
device_group { *host_name* **|** *IP_address* } { *service_name* **|** *service_number* }

device_group	Defined in the HORCM_DEV section. Each group defined in HORCM_DEV must be represented in the HORCM_INST section only once for every remote RM instance.
host_name	Host name of the host on which the remote instance runs. The remote instance can run on the same host as the local instance.
IP_address	IP address of the host on which the remote instance runs. The remote instance can run on the same host as the local instance.
service_name	Service name that was entered into the services file for the remote instance.
service_number	Service number that was entered into the services file for the remote instance.

Description

The **HORCM_INST** section defines how RM groups link to remote RM instances.

Example

The example below shows that the opposite side of the pairs contained within the group called group1 are serviced from a RM residing on host yellow that listens on a UDP port defined in **/etc/services** to have the name horcm0.

HORCM_INST
group1 yellow horcm0

Starting the instances

After the RM instance configuration files have been set up, you can start the instances. See the instructions for your operating system:

HP-UX

Run this shell command on each host that runs an RM instance:

/usr/bin/horcmstart.sh [*instance_number*] [*instance_number*] . . .

If you do not specify an instance number, the command uses the value stored in the **HORCMINST** environment variable. The default value is 0.

Windows NT/2000/2003

From the DOS prompt, under the **\HORCM\etc** directory, type this command:

horcmstart *instance_number* [*instance_number*] . . .

MPE/iX

See Appendix E, Porting notice for MPE/iX (page 345).

OpenVMS

Run RM instance as a detached process. See Appendix F, Porting notice for OpenVMS (page 355).

Environment variables for BC

By default, all RM operations affect CA volumes. To enable RM commands to control BC operations, set the **HORCC_MRCF** environment variable to **1**.

RM commands are issued to the local instance host. To specify which instance is the local instance, set the **HORCMINST** environment variable,

as in the following examples of environment variables, where *n* is the value of the RM instance for the RM command.

UNIX

For UNIX ksh, use the **export** command:

export HORCC_MRCF=1
export HORCMINST=*n*

For UNIX csh, use the **setenv** command:

setenv HORCC_MRCF=1
setenv HORCMINST=*n*

Windows NT/2000/2003

For Windows NT/2000/2003, use the **set** command:

set HORCC_MRCF=1
set HORCMINST=*n*

MPE/iX

For MPE/iX, use the **setenv** command.

setenv HORCC_MRCF 1

setenv HORCMINST *n*

OpenVMS

For OpenVMS, set the environment variable using symbol.

HORCC_MRCF := 1
HORCMINST := 0

Issuing CA commands

To issue CA commands, the **HORCC_MRCF** environment variable must be removed and the **HORCMINST** environment variable must be set.

UNIX

Setting a null value is not sufficient.

For UNIX ksh, use the **unset** command:

unset HORCC_MRCF
set HORCMINST=*n*

For UNIX csh, use the **unsetenv** command:

unsetenv HORCC_MRCF
setenv HORCMINST=*n*

Windows NT/2000/2003

For Windows NT/2000/2003, use the **usetenv** command option:

raidscan –x usetenv HORCC_MRCF
raidscan –x setenv HORCMINST *n*

Related Information For syntax descriptions, see **usetenv** (page 218) and **setenv** (page 211).

MPE/iX

Within the POSIX shell, use the **unset** command:

unset HORCC_MRCF
set HORCMINST=*n*

OpenVMS

For Open VMS, use the following command:

$DELETE/SYMBOL HORCC_MRCF

3

Using RAID Manager

This chapter describes commands, scripts, functions, and procedures for RAID Manager (RM).

Using RAID Manager commands

To create and manage CA and BC pairs with RM, use the following commands:

paircreate	Establishes a primary to secondary pair relationship between volumes. See “paircreate” (page 128).
pairdisplay	Displays the state of volumes. See “pairdisplay” (page 138).
pairsplit	Suspends or deletes a paired volume. See “pairsplit” (page 163).
pairresync	Restores a volume from a PSUE/PSUS/SSWS state to a PAIR state. See “pairresync” (page 155).

Before issuing RM commands, set the **HORCMINST** environment variable to refer to the instance number you want to use for the local RM instance.

Continuous Access

After installing CA, the system administrator must conduct operation tests for recovery and maintenance, to check for possible failures that can occur. The HP representatives can identify the possible causes of a possible failure by using the SVP.

Caution *For CA, make sure to unset the **HORCC_MRCF** variable. Do not set the **HORCC_MRCF** variable to 0.*

Business Copy

For BC, set **HORCC_MRCF=1**.

Using RAID Manager commands in scripts

An RM script is a list of instructions contained in a host file to automate a series of CA and BC operations. The host reads the script file and carries out each command as if it were typed in individually.

Using RM host scripting, you can execute a large number of CA and BC commands in rapid sequence.

Paired CA volume status definitions

Each pair of CA volumes consists of a primary volume (P-VOL) and secondary volume (S-VOL). Each pair has a pairing status.

The P-VOL controls the status for the pair, which is reflected in the status of the S-VOL. The major CA pair statuses are:

- SMPL
- PAIR
- PSUS
- COPY
- PFUS

When you issue a CA command, the status usually changes. A read or write request from the host is allowed or rejected, depending on the status of the paired volume, as shown in the figure on the next page.

Caution *Terminology and functionality differ somewhat between the RM CLI interface and the RC GUI interface. For instance:*

- *The terms "suspend" and "split" may have opposite meanings*
- *S-VOL read/write options while suspended may differ*
- *The GUI allows you to choose/force a PSUE state*

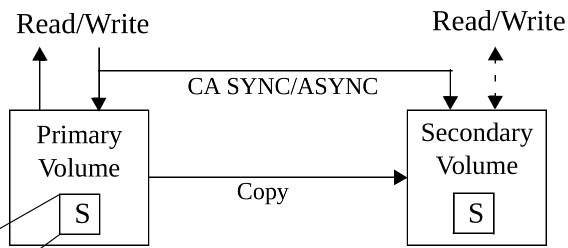
For more detail, refer to the following manuals:

HP StorageWorks Business Copy XP: User's Guide

HP StorageWorks Continuous Access XP: User's Guide

Note that the data at the async-CA S-VOL is assured to be consistent, but is only current in PSUS state.

If one of the volumes making up an aggregated LUSE volume is PSUE status, the LUSE volume will be reported as PDUB (dubious) status.



Status	Pairing status	Primary	Secondary
SMPL	Unpaired volume	R/W enabled	R/W enabled
PAIR	Paired/duplicated volume, consistency assured	R/W enabled	R* enabled
COPY	In paired state, but (out of order) copying to the secondary volume is not yet completed	R/W enabled	R* enabled
PSUS	In paired state, but updating the secondary volume is suspended. The P-VOLs and S-VOLs track the differences in the changed data.The P-VOL data is typically dominant.	R/W enabled	See Note 1. R/W enabled
PSUE (Error)	PSUS status due to an internal or link error	See Note 2. R/W enabled	R* enabled
PFUS	PSUS status due to a side file full error	See Note 2. R/W enabled	R* enabled
Note 1: Valid when reading and writing are enbabled using an option of the pair splitting. Note 2: Reading and writing are enabled as long as no errors occur in the primary volume. R*: Reading disabled when the user specified the "-m noread " in the paircreate command.			

Paired BC volume status definitions

Each paired BC volume consists of a primary volume (P-VOL) and secondary volume (S-VOL). Each volume maintains its own pair status.

The P-VOL controls the pair state that is typically reflected in the status of the S-VOL. The major BC pair statuses are:

- SMPL
- PAIR
- PSUS
- COPY
- RCPY

The status can be changed when a RM command is issued. A read or write request from the host is allowed or rejected according to the status, as shown in the following figure.

Caution *Terminology and functionality differ somewhat between the RM CLI interface and the RC GUI interface. For instance:*

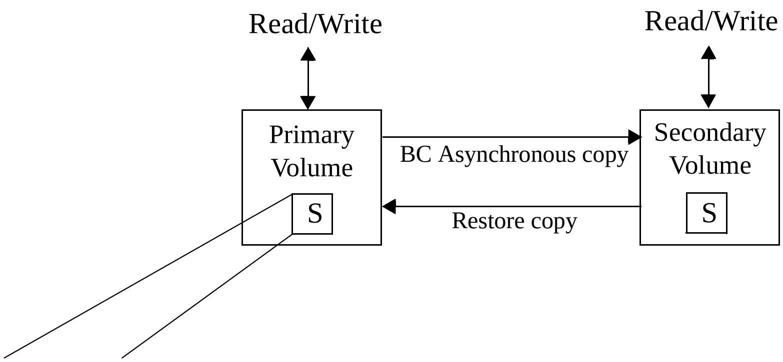
- *The terms "suspend" and "split" may have opposite meanings*
- *S-VOL read/write options while suspended may differ*
- *The GUI allows you to choose/force a PSUE state*

For more detail, refer to the following manuals:

HP StorageWorks Business Copy XP: User's Guide

HP StorageWorks Continuous Access XP: User's Guide

Note that reading the BC S-VOL in any state but PSUS is "at your own risk" in that the data is likely to be inconsistent as well as not current.



Status	Pairing status	Primary	Secondary
SMPL	Unpaired volume	R/W enabled	R/W enabled
PAIR	Paired/duplicated volumes. Data in the primary and secondary volumes are not assured to be identical.	R/W enabled	**R*** enabled
COPY	In paired state, but copying to the secondary volume is not completed. The P-VOL/S-VOL are not assured to be identical.	R/W enabled	**R*** enabled
RCPY	This reverse copy state infers copying from the secondary to the primary volume by using the **–restore** option of **pairresync**.	**R*** enabled	R enabled
PSUS	In paired state, but updating the secondary volume is suspended. The P-VOL and S-VOL notes any new changes in a bitmap.	R/W enabled	R/W enabled
PSUE (Error)	PSUS status due to an internal failure (or RC GUI command). The P-VOL and S-VOL maintain a delta bitmap.	R/W enabled (See Note 1)	**R*** enabled

Note 1 : Valid when reading and writing are enabled, as far as no failure occurs in the P-VOL.
R* : Reading disabled when the user specified the **–m** *noread* option in the paircreate command.

File types and structure

The RM product includes files supplied for the user, log files created internally, and files created by the user. These files are stored in the server's local disk. See the following tables..

Title	File name, Location	Executable for Command
HORCM (RM)	**/etc/horcmgr**	*none*
HORCM_CONF	**/HORCM/etc/horcm.conf**	*none*
Takeover	**/usr/bin/horctakeover**	**horctakeover**
Make configuration file	**/usr/bin/mkconf.sh**	**mkconf**
Volume Accessibility check	**/usr/bin/paircurchk**	**paircurchk**
Pair generation	**/usr/bin/paircreate**	**paircreate**
Pair splitting/suspending	**/usr/bin/pairsplit**	**pairsplit**
Pair resynchronization	**/usr/bin/pairresync**	**pairresync**
Event waiting	**/usr/bin/pairevtwait**	**pairevtwait**
Error notification	**/usr/bin/pairmon**	**pairmon**
Volume checking	**/usr/bin/pairvolchk**	**pairvolchk**
Pair configuration confirmation	**/usr/bin/pairdisplay**	**pairdisplay**
RAID scan	**/usr/bin/raidscan**	**raidscan**
RAID activity report	**/usr/bin/raidar**	**raidar**
Connection confirmation	**/usr/bin/raidqry**	**raidqry**

(continued)

Title	File name, Location	Executable for Command
Trace control	**/usr/bin/horcctl**	**horcctl**
Synchronization waiting command	**/usr/bin/pairsyncwait**	**pairsyncwait**
HORCM (RM) activation script	**/usr/bin/horcmstart.sh**	**horcmstart.sh**
HORCM shutdown script	**/usr/bin/horcmshutdown.sh**	**horcmshutdown.sh**
Connection confirmation	**/HORCM/usr/bin/inqraid***	**inqraid**
Oracle validation setting	**/usr/bin/raidvchkset**	**raidvchkset**
Oracle validation confirmation	**/usr/bin/raidvchkdsp**	**raidvchkdsp**
Oracle validation confirmation	**usr/bin/raidvchkscan**	**raidvchkscan**

*The **inqraid** command is provided only for Linux, HP-UX, Solaris, MPE/iX, and OpenVMS.

Title	File name, Location	Command file
HORCM (RM)	**\HORCM\etc\horcmgr.exe**	*none*
HORCM_CONF	**\HORCM\etc\horcm.conf**	*none*
Takeover	**\HORCM\etc\horctakeover.exe**	**horctakeover**
Make configuration file	**\HORCM\etc\mkconf.exe**	**mkconf**
Accessibility check	**\HORCM\etc\paircurchk.exe**	**paircurchk**
Pair generation	**\HORCM\etc\paircreate.exe**	**paircreate**

(continued)

Title	File name, Location	Command file
Pair split/suspend	**\HORCM\etc\pairsplit.exe**	**pairsplit**
Pair resynchronization	**\HORCM\etc\pairresync.exe**	**pairresync**
Event waiting	**\HORCM\etc\pairevtwait.exe**	**pairevtwait**
Error notification	**\HORCM\etc\pairmon.exe**	**pairmon**
Volume checking	**\HORCM\etc\pairvolchk.exe**	**pairvolchk**
Pair configuration confirmation	**\HORCM\etc\pairdisplay.exe**	**pairdisplay**
RAID scanning	**\HORCM\etc\raidscan.exe**	**raidscan**
RAID activity reporting	**\HORCM\etc\raidar.exe**	**raidar**
Connection confirmation	**\HORCM\etc\raidqry.exe**	**raidqry**
Trace control	**\HORCM\etc\horcctl.exe**	**horcctl**
HORCM activation script	**\HORCM\etc\horcmstart.exe**	**horcmstart**
HORCM shutdown script	**\HORCM\etc\horcmshutdown.exe**	**horcmshutdown**
Synchronous waiting	**\HORCM\etc\pairsyncwait.exe**	**pairsyncwait**
Connection confirmation	**\HORCM\etc\inqraid.exe**	**inqraid**
Takeover	**\HORCM\usr\bin\horctakeover.exe**	**horctakeover**
Accessibility check	**\HORCM\usr\bin\paircurchk.exe**	**paircurchk**
Pair generation	**\HORCM\usr\bin\paircreate.exe**	**paircreate**
Pair split/suspend	**\HORCM\usr\bin\pairsplit.exe**	**pairsplit**
Pair resynchronization	**\HORCM\usr\bin\pairresync.exe**	**pairresync**
Event waiting	**\HORCM\usr\bin\pairevtwait.exe**	**pairevtwait**
Volume check	**\HORCM\usr\bin\pairvolchk.exe**	**pairvolchk**
Synchronization waiting command	**\HORCM\usr\bin\pairsyncwait.exe**	**pairsyncwait**

(continued)

Title	File name, Location	Command file
Pair configuration confirmation	**\HORCM\usr\bin\pairdisplay.exe**	**pairdisplay**
RAID scan	**\HORCM\usr\bin\raidscan.exe**	**raidscan**
Connection confirmation	**\HORCM\usr\bin\raidqry.exe**	**raidqry**
Oracle validation setting	**\HORCM\usr\bin\raidvchkset**	**raidvchkset**
Oracle validation confirmation	**\HORCM\usr\bin\raidvchkdsp**	**raidvchkdsp**
Oracle validation confirmation	**\HORCM\usr\bin\raidvchkscan**	**raidvchkscan**
Tool	**\HORCM\Tool\chgacl.exe**	**chgacl**

Windows NT/2000/2003 command notes:

- **\HORCM\etc** commands are used when issuing commands interactively from the console.
- If the user issues these commands without any arguments, RM will enter interactive mode.
- **\HORCM\usr\bin** commands are not interactive.
- **\HORCM\usr\bin** commands are used for programatic execution from a user application.

Log files

RM and RM commands write internal logs and trace information to help the user identify the causes of RM failures and to keeps records of the transition history of pairs.

Log file format

Log files provided are the startup log file, error log file, trace file, and core file, which are located as shown below. HOST denotes the host name, and PID denotes the process ID within that host.

UNIX Systems

startup log files	HORCM startup log **$HORCM_LOG/horcm_*HOST*.log**
	Command log **$HORCC_LOG/horcc_*HOST*.log**
error log file	HORCM error log **$HORCM_LOG/horcmlog_*HOST*/horcm.log**
trace files	HORCM trace **$HORCM_LOG/horcmlog_*HOST*/horcm_PID.trc**
	Command trace **$HORCM_LOG/horcmlog_*HOST*/horcc_PID.trc**
core files	HORCM core **$HORCM_LOG/core_*HOST*_PID/core**
	Command core **$HORCM_LOG/core_*HOST*_PID/core**

Windows NT/2000/2003 Systems

startup log files	HORCM startup log **$HORCM_LOG\horcm_*HOST*_log.txt**
	Command log **$HORCC_LOG\horcc_*HOST*_log.txt**
error log file	HORCM error log **$HORCM_LOG\horcmlog_*HOST*\horcm_log.txt**
trace files	HORCM trace **$HORCM_LOG\horcmlog_*HOST*\horcm_PID_trc.txt**
	Command trace **$HORCM_LOG\horcmlog_*HOST*\horcc_PID_trc.txt**
core files	HORCM core **$HORCM_LOG\core_*HOST*_PID\core**
	Command core **$HORCM_LOG\core_*HOST*_PID\core**

MPE/iX Systems

startup log files	HORCM startup log **$HORCM_LOG/horcm_*HOST*.log**
	Command log **$HORCC_LOG/horcc_*HOST*.log**
error log file	HORCM error log **$HORCM_LOG/horcmlog_*HOST*/horcm.log**
trace file	HORCM trace **$HORCM_LOG/horcmlog_*HOST*/horcm_PID.trc**

OpenVMS Systems

startup log file	**sys$posix_root :[horcm.log]**

Log directories

The log directories for the RM instance specify the command log files using the environment variables:

$HORCM_LOG A trace log file directory specified using the environment variable **HORCM_LOG**. The HORCM (RM) log file, trace file and core file (as well as the command trace file and core file) are stored in this directory. If you do not specify an environment variable, **/HORCM/log/curlog** becomes the default.

$HORCC_LOG A command log file directory specified using the environment variable **HORCC_LOG**. If you do not specify an environment variable, the directory **/HORCM/log*n*** (***n*** is the instance number) becomes the default.

While CA is running, log files are stored in the **$HORCM_LOG** directory. When RM starts up, the log files created are saved automatically in the **$HORCM_LOGS** directory shown below.

RM “in operation” log file directory

$HORCM_LOG = /HORCM/log*n***/curlog**
n is the instance number.

RM “automatic archives” log file directory

$HORCM_LOGS = /HORCM/log*n***/tmplog**
n is the instance number.

Output to host log file

If you cannot create RM log files or an error occurs before the log files are created, error logs are output in the system log file.

If an RM instance activation fails, check the system log file, identify the error cause, and take any necessary action.

User-created files

When constructing the RM environment, the system administrator should make a copy of the **HORCM_CONF** file, edit the file for the system environment, and save the file:

UNIX

/etc/horcm.conf
or
/etc/horcm*n*.conf

where *n* is the instance number.

Windows NT/2000/2003

\WINNT\horcm.conf
or
\WINNT\horcm*n*.conf

where *n* is the instance number.

MPE/iX

/etc/horcm.conf
or
/etc/horcm*n*.conf

where *n* is the instance number.

OpenVMS

sys$posix_root : [etc]horcm*n*.conf

where *n* is the instance number.

User-settable environment variables

When activating RM or initiating a command, you can specify any of the following environment variables:

- RM Environment Variables
- RM command Environment Variables
- RM instance Environment Variables
- environment variable for BC commands

RM environment variables

$HORCM_CONF
Specifies the name of the RM configuration file.
Default: **/etc/horcm.conf**

$HORCM_LOG Specifies the name of the RM log directory.
Default: **/HORCM/log/curlog**

$HORCM_TRCSZ
Specifies the size of the RM trace file in kilobytes. The file size of 1 MB is used by default if no size is specified.

You cannot change the trace file size of RM in real time using the **horcctl** command.

$HORCM_TRCLVL
Specifies the RM trace level (between 0 and 15). If you specify a negative value, the trace mode is canceled. If you do not specify a level, tracing becomes level 4 by default.

You can change the trace level of RM in real time by using the **horcctl –c –l** command.

$HORCM_TRCBUF
Specifies the RM trace mode. If you specify this

environment variable, data is written to the trace file in nonbuffered mode. If you do not specify it, data is written in buffered mode.

The trace mode of RM can be changed in real time by using the **horcctl –c –b** command.

$HORCM_TRCUENV
This variable specifies whether to use the trace control parameters (TRCLVL and TRCBUF trace types) as they are when a command is issued. When you specify this environment variable, the latest set trace control parameters are used. If you do not specify it, the default trace control parameters for RM commands are used, and tracing becomes level 4, and trace mode is set to buffer mode.

$HORCM_FCTBL
This variable changes the fibre address conversion table number when the target ID, which is indicated by the **raidscan** command, is different from the target ID used by the host.

RM command environment variables

When issued, CA commands use these environment variables:

$HORCC_LOG Specifies a command log directory name. If this variable is not specified, the following directory is used:

/HORCM/log*n*

(*n* is the instance number)

$HORCC_TRCSZ

Specifies the size of the command trace file in kilobytes. If you do not specify a size, the default trace size for CA commands is used. This default trace size is the trace size used by CA.

The default trace size for CA commands can be changed in real time by using the **horcctl –d –s** command.

$HORCC_TRCLVL

Specifies the command trace level (between 0 and 15). If you specify a negative value, the trace mode is canceled. If you do not specify a level, the default trace level for CA commands is used. This tracing is level 4 by default (or the CA level). You can change the default trace level for CA commands in real time using the **horcctl –d –l** command.

$HORCC_TRCBUF

This variable specifies the command trace mode. If you specify this environment variable, data is written to the trace file in nonbuffer mode. If you do not specify it, the default trace mode for CA commands is used. This default tracing mode is buffered mode (or the CA trace mode). You can change the default trace mode for CA commands in real time using the **horcctl –d –b** command.

RM instance environment variable

The **$HORCMINST** variable specifies the RM instance number when operating two or more RM instances on a single server.

You must specify an instance number in the command execution environment and the RM activation environment.

RM protection

The RAID Manager protection facility restricts RM volume control operations to volumes that:

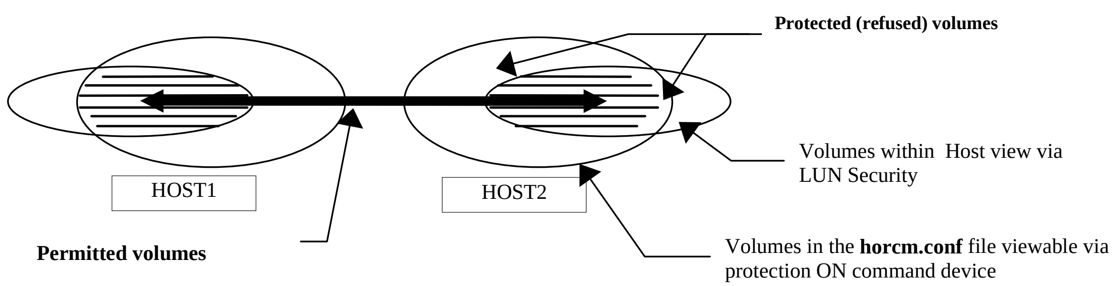
- the host is allowed to see, with or without host-based LUN security (Secure LUN XP)
- are listed in the RM configuration file.

To avoid inconsistency, RM security cannot be controlled within RM itself.

RM security is determined by command device definition within the SVP, Remote Console, or via SNMP. Upon definition, the protection facility for each command device can be enabled by setting an attribute. RM refers to this attribute when it first recognizes the command device.

Command devices with protection ON permit access to volumes that are not only on their list of allowed volumes, but are also host viewable.

The following figure shows the definition of a protected (access refused) volume:



Protection facility specification

Only permitted volumes and volumes visible to the host can be listed in the **horcm.conf** file. A volume must fulfill two requirements to be considered "permitted" by the RM protection facility:

- It is host viewable (for example, with the HP supplied Inquiry tool).
- It is a volume listed in the **horcm.conf** file.

RM manages volume mirror descriptors (MU# for CA, BC0/BC1/BC2) as a unit. The permitted volumes in the following table lie at the intersection (the dark shaded areas) of volume device files, representing volumes that the host is allowed to see (row), and volumes that are listed in the **horcm.conf** file (column).

Volumes on horcm.conf	Mirror descriptor defined in horcm.conf							
	CA		BC0		BC1		BC2	
	L	not	L	not	L	not	L	not
Unknown	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
/dev/rdsk/c0t0d0	P	N	P	N	P	N	P	N

Guide to table terms:

L — The volume mirror descriptor is listed in the **horcm.conf** file.

Not — The volume mirror descriptor is not listed in the **horcm.conf** file.

Unknown — Volumes that the host cannot see, even though the volumes were listed in the **horcm.conf** file.

P — Permitted

N — Not permitted

Permission command

To allow initial access to a protected volume, the Permission command must be executed. This command is the **–find inst** option of **raidscan**; see “raidscan” (page 189). It is executed by **/etc/horcmgr** automatically upon RM startup. With security enabled, RM permits operations on a volume only after the Permission command is executed. Operations target volumes listed in the **horcm.conf** file.

The command compares volumes in the **horcm.conf** file to all host viewable volumes. Results are noted within RM in an internal table of protected and permitted volumes based on the **horcm.conf** file and the results of the Inquiry command. The Inquiry result is based on the LUN security for that host; you must configure LUN security before beginning RM operation.

Attempts to control protected volumes are rejected with the error code EX_ENPERM.

Protection facility support

XP12000 Protection facility supported.

XP1024/128 Protection facility supported.

XP512/48 Protection facility supported.

XP256 Not supported. XP256 can protect volumes only by using the protection mode of RM.

Sequent (Dynix/ptx)
Not supported. If a command device is set to enable protection mode, it is ignored by RM.

Digital UNIX
Not supported. If a command device is set to enable protection mode, it is ignored by RM.

MPE/iX	Not supported (only SCSI connections). MPE/iX can protect volumes by using only the protection mode of RM.
OpenVMS	Not supported. If a command device is set to enable protection mode, it is ignored by RM.

Command device configuration

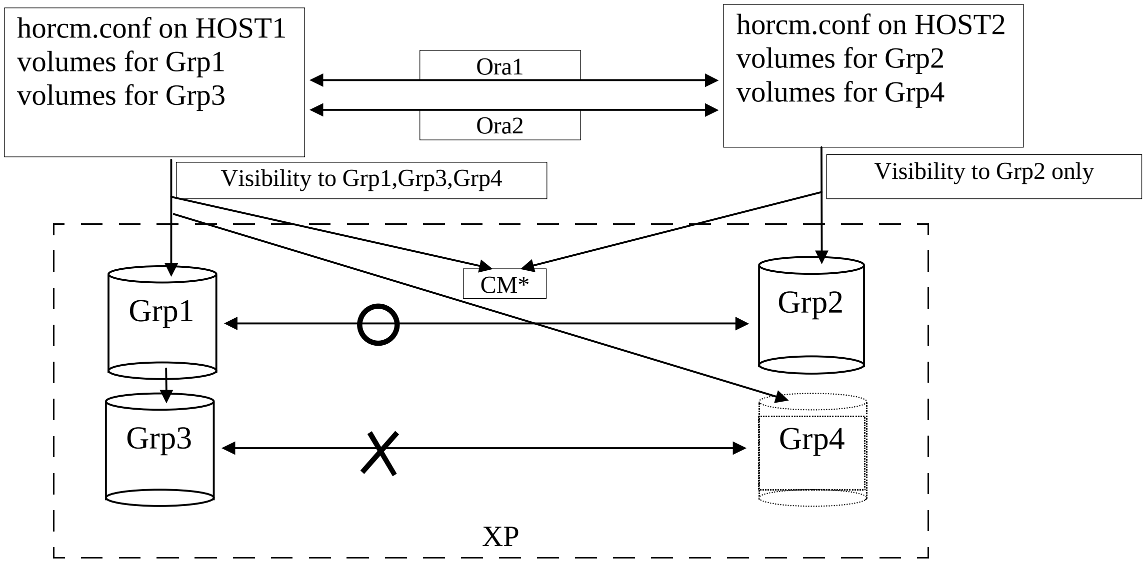
You can use both protected and unprotected modes in a single array by enabling or disabling the protection facility of each command device. As a minimum configuration, it is possible to have two command devices, one with protection enabled and the other disabled.

Protection mode is enabled for the host that uses a LUN security enabled command device.

LUN visibility from two host configuration

The following figure shows a two host protection mode configuration sharing one array. Operations directed at Ora2 are rejected because of no visibility for Grp4 from HOST2.

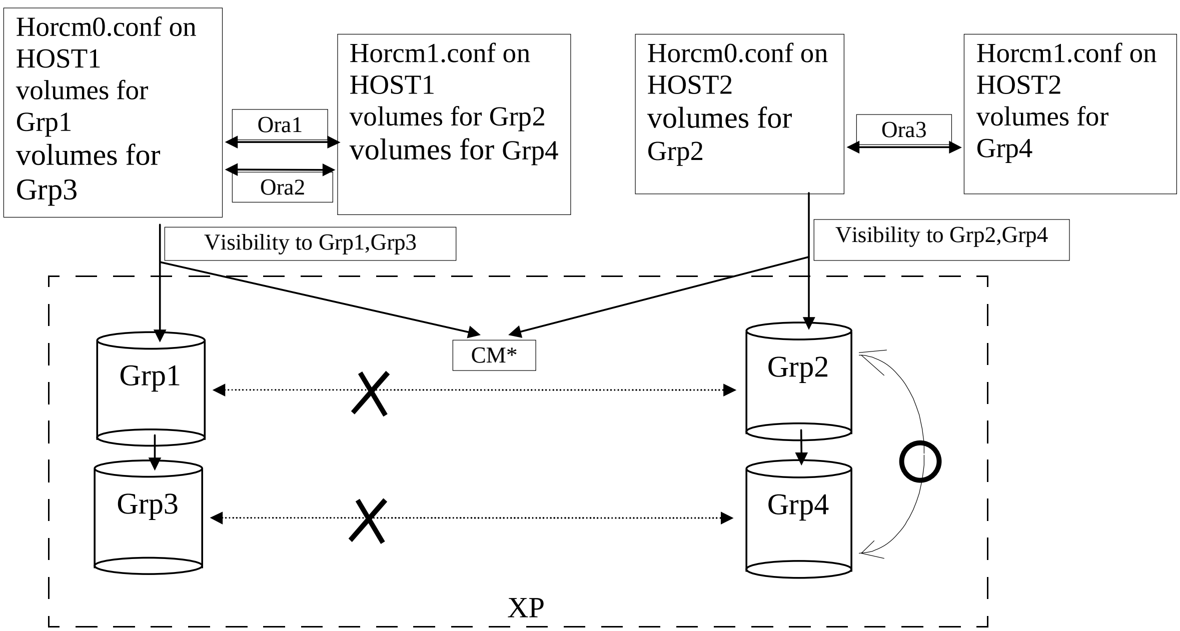
CM* represents a command device with protection set to ON at creation time.


horcm.conf on HOST1
volumes for Grp1
volumes for Grp3
Ora1
Ora2
horcm.conf on HOST2
volumes for Grp2
volumes for Grp4
Visibility to Grp1,Grp3,Grp4
Visibility to Grp2 only
CM*
Grp1
Grp2
Grp3
Grp4
XP

LUN visibility from one host configuration

The following figure shows a one host protection mode configuration sharing one array. Ora1 and Ora2 control operations are rejected because of no visibility to Grp2 and Grp4 from HOST1. If HOST1 uses a command device with protection set to OFF at creation time, then Ora1 and Ora2 volume pairs can be controlled.

CM* represents a command device with protection ON.



Protection is implemented completely within RM. If RM uses a command device with protection enabled, RM will check permissions on all paired volumes with which it deals.

Commands controlled by RM protection

The following commands are controlled by RM protection:

- **horctakeover**, **paircurchk**, **paircreate**, **pairsplit**, **pairresync**, **pairvolchk**, **pairevtwait**, **pairsyncwait**

  When these commands are issued to non-permitted volumes, RM rejects the request with an error code of **EX_ENPERM**.

- **pairdisplay**

  The **pairdisplay** command has no RM protection restrictions. Using this command, you can confirm whether volumes are permitted or not. Non-permitted volumes are shown without any LDEV# information. LDEV# information is shown as ****.

Example

```
# pairdisplay -g oradb
Group   PairVol(L/R) (Port#,TID,LU-M),Seq#, LDEV#.P/S,Status, Seq#,P-LDEV# M
oradb   oradev1(L)  (CL1-D , 3,  0-0) 35013 ****..----  ----,-----   ----  -
oradb   oradev1(R)  (CL1-D , 3,  1-0) 35013 ****..----  ----,-----   ----  -
```

- **raidscan**

  The **raidscan** command shows all volumes without restriction because it does not use the HORCM_DEV and HORCM_INST fields in the **horcm.conf** file.

  To identify permitted volumes with **raidscan**, use the **–find** option (supported with version 01.05.00). This option shows the device file name and array serial number information. You can use **raidscan –find** to create the **horcm.conf** file, because only permitted volumes (from the host's perspective) will be displayed.

Example (HP-UX)

```
# ioscan  -fun | grep rdsk | raidscan -find
DEVICE_FILE         UID  S/F PORT   TARG  LUN    SERIAL  LDEV  PRODUCT_ID
/dev/rdsk/c0t3d0      0    F  CL1-D     3    0     35013    17  OPEN-3
/dev/rdsk/c0t3d1      0    F  CL1-D     3    1     35013    18  OPEN-3
```

- **raidscan –find inst**

  RM recognizes permitted volumes as a result of executing **raidscan –find inst** (the Permission command). This command issues a SCSI inquiry to the specified device file to get the array Ser# and volume LDEV# from the XP array. Then, it cross checks volumes in the **horcm.conf** file against host viewable volumes and stores the result within the RM instance.

  The following example shows the relationship between device files and the **horcm.conf** file upon manual execution of the Permission command in an HP-UX environment. Operations to all volumes displayed by **ioscan** will be allowed.

Example (HP-UX)

```
# ioscan  -fun | grep rdsk | raidscan -find inst
DEVICE_FILE            Group    PairVol      PORT    TARG   LUN M    SERIAL  LDEV
/dev/rdsk/c0t3d0       oradb    oradev1      CL1-D      3     0 -    35013     17
/dev/rdsk/c0t3d0       oradb    oradev1      CL1-D      3     0 0    35013     17
```

Permitting operations on protected volumes

Protection Mode requires a recognition step to check the host accessibility of volumes against the **horcm.conf** file at RM startup, using a command device with protection ON. This registration process (① or ②) is executed automatically by **/etc/horcmgr** at RM startup.

① The following is executed to register permitted volumes in a file ($HORCMPERM). If the $HORCMPERM file already exists, then it will use the existing file without doing a new **ioscan** (②).

If you want to permit even fewer volumes, edit the device file list in the $HORCMPERM file. If you try to add device files that **ioscan** does not see (due to nonexistence or a LUN security product), an error will be returned at access time. This file is simply the text output (device files only) of a prior **ioscan** with the non XP device files removed.

Naming the $HORCMPERM file

UNIX systems

The $HORCMPERM variable is set by default to either **/etc/horcmperm.conf** or **/etc/horcmperm*.conf** (where * is the RM instance number).

Example (HP-UX)

```
'cat $HORCMPERM | /HORCM/usr/bin/raidscan -find inst'

# The following is an example to show permitted  LVM
# Volume groups.
# For MU# 0
vg00  /dev/rdsk/c0t3d0  /dev/rdsk/c0t3d1
vg00  /dev/rdsk/c0t3d2  /dev/rdsk/c0t3d3

# For MU# 1
vg01  /dev/rdsk/c0t3d0  /dev/rdsk/c0t3d1
vg01  /dev/rdsk/c0t3d2  /dev/rdsk/c0t3d3
```

Verifying a group for vg01:

The following example verifies whether a LVM volume group is mapped to a group (MU#1 for BC) in the **horcm.conf** file correctly.

```
# export HORCC_MRCF=1
# cat /etc/horcmperm.conf | grep vg01 | raidscan -find verify 1 -fd
```

OR

```
# vgdisplay -v /dev/vg01|grep dsk|sed
's/\/*\/dsk\//\/rdsk\//g'|raidscan -find verify 1 -fd
DEVICE_FILE        Group   PairVol   Device_File   M   SERIAL  LDEV
/dev/rdsk/c0t3d0   oradb1  oradev1     c0t3d0      1    35013   17
/dev/rdsk/c0t3d1   oradb1  oradev2     c0t3d1      1    35013   18
/dev/rdsk/c0t3d2   oradb   oradev3     c0t3d2      1    35013   19
/dev/rdsk/c0t3d3     -        -          -         1    35013   20
```

Windows NT/2000/2003 systems

The $HORCMPERM variable is set by default to either **\WINNT\horcmperm.conf** or **\WINNT\horcmperm*.conf** (where * is the instance number).

```
'type $HORCMPERM | x:\HORCM\etc\raidscan.exe -find inst'
# The following is an example to permit DB Volumes.
# Note: a numerical value is interpreted as Harddisk#.
# DB0 For MU# 0
```

```
Hd0-10
harddisk12  harddisk13  harddisk17

# DB1 For MU# 1
hd20-23
```

Verifying a group for DB1:

The following example shows how to verify whether a DB volume group is correctly mapped to a horcm.conf group (MU#1 for BC).

```
D:\HORCM\etc> set HORCC_MRCF=1
D:\HORCM\etc> echo hd20-23 | raidscan -find verify 1 -fd
DEVICE_FILE    Group   PairVol  Device_File   M   SERIAL  LDEV
Harddisk20     oradb1  oradev1  Harddisk20    1    35013    17
Harddisk21     oradb1  oradev2  Harddisk21    1    35013    18
Harddisk22     oradb   oradev3  Harddisk22    1    35013    19
Harddisk23       -       -          -         1    35013    20
```

② If no $HORCMPERM file exists, then the following commands can be manually executed to permit the use of all volumes the host is currently allowed to see (LUN security products may or may not be in place).

HP-UX

```
'ioscan  -fun | grep rdsk | /HORCM/usr/bin/raidscan -find inst'
```

Linux

```
'ls /dev/sd* | /HORCM/usr/bin/raidscan -find inst'
```

Solaris

```
'ls /dev/rdsk/* | /HORCM/usr/bin/raidscan -find inst'
```

AIX

```
'lsdev -C -c disk | grep hdisk | /HORCM/usr/bin/raidscan -find inst'
```

If the **lsdev** command does not show the TID and LUN (for example, 2F-00-00-2,0) in the column output for the devices as shown below, then the **–d[g]** *raw device* option (on all commands) and **raidscan –find** will be unable to find target devices.

```
# lsdev -C -c disk
hdisk1  Defined   04-02-01     Other FC SCSI Disk Drive
```

This happens when a Fibre Channel adapter is used with a different device driver (for example, an Emulex adapter with an AIX driver).

MPE/iX

```
'callci dstat | /HORCM/usr/bin/raidscan -find inst'
```

Windows NT/2000/2003

```
'echo hd0-999 | x:\HORCM\etc\raidscan.exe -find inst'
```

The MAX volume to be scanned is **1000** by default.

Important This registration process is not without price because it is executed automatically upon **/etc/horcmgr** startup without checking for protection mode in order to validate the **–fd** option. Permitted volume registration brings a performance degradation in **horcmstart.sh** (RM startup), but the RM daemon runs as usual, depending on how many devices a host has.

If you want RM to start up faster in non-protection mode, then you can set $HORCMPERM to **SIZE 0 byte** as a dummy file or set HORCMPERM=MGRNOINST. At that time, the **–fd** option will show the Device_File name as Unknown. Afterwards, you can use **raidscan –find inst** in order to validate the **–fd** option.

Environment variables

$HORCMPROMOD

This environment variable sets protection mode ON by force. If your command device was created with protection mode OFF, this parameter forces protection mode ON, as shown in the table below.

Original Command Device Setting	HORCMPROMOD	Resulting Mode
Protection mode ON	No Effect (already on) →	Protection mode ON
Protection mode OFF	Variable not set →	Protection mode OFF
	Variable set →	Protection mode ON

$HORCMPERM

This variable is used to specify the RM permission file. If no file name is specified, the default is **/etc/horcmperm.conf**, or **/etc/horcmperm*.conf** (where * is the instance number).

- If a RM permission file exists, then **/etc/horcmgr** executes the following command to permit the volumes listed in the file.

(HP-UX)

```
'cat $HORCMPERM | /HORCM/usr/bin/raidscan -find inst'
```

(Windows NT/2000/2003

```
'type $HORCMPERM | x:\HORCM\etc\raidscan.exe -find inst'
```

- If no RM permission file exists, then **/etc/horcmgr** executes this built-in command to permit all volumes owned by the host.

(HP-UX)

```
'ioscan -fun | grep rdsk | /HORCM/usr/bin/raidscan -find inst'
```

(Linux)

```
'ls /dev/sd* | /HORCM/usr/bin/raidscan -find inst'
```

(Solaris)

```
'ls /dev/rdsk/* | /HORCM/usr/bin/raidscan -find inst'
```

(AIX)

```
'lsdev -C -c disk | grep hdisk | /HORCM/usr/bin/raidscan -find
inst'
```

(Tru64 UNIX)

```
'ls /dev/rdisk/dsk* | /HORCM/usr/bin/raidscan -find inst'
```

(Digital UNIX)

```
'ls /dev/rrz* | /HORCM/usr/bin/raidscan -find inst'
```

(DYNIX/ptx)

```
'/etc/dumpconf -d | grep sd | /HORCM/usr/bin/raidscan -find inst'
```

(MPE/iX)

```
'callci dstat | /HORCM/usr/bin/raidscan -find inst'
```

(Windows NT/2000/2003)

```
'x:\HORCM\etc\raidscan.exe -pi $PhysicalDrive -find inst'
```

- If $HORCMPERM is set to MGRNOINST, **/etc/horcmgr** does not execute the built-in command.

  This is used to execute a system command to permit the volumes specified from a user's shell script.

OpenVMS

```
$ inqraid dka145-146
```

Identifying a command device using protection mode

The SCSI inquiry output can not be changed to identify a command device in protection mode. Therefore, RM needs to provide a way to find the protection mode command device. The **horcctl –D –C** command designates a protection mode command device by appending ‘*’ to the device file name as follows:

(HP-UX)

```
# horcctl -D
Current control device = /dev/rdsk/c0t0d0*
```

Using RAID Manager on a Windows 2000/2003 system with "user" system privileges

By default, RAID Manager requires Windows system administrator privileges to execute RM commands. This is because RAID Manager needs to open the command device directly as a physical drive.

This section describes how to use the **chgacl.exe** to use RAID Manager commands without Administrator system privileges.

For a user to use "user" privileges to execute RM commands, the system administrator and the user need to perform some the following procedures.

Note: The parameters for the commands shown below are case sensitive.

Windows System Administrator

Allowing a user to use HORCM_CMD by adding a user name to the physical drive

As System Administration, add the user name to the Device Object of the command device in the configuration definition file. This will allow HORCM_CMD to work.

By default, **chgacl.exe** grants read, write and execute permissions. To restrict the permissions, see the section "Allowing different levels of access to a Device Object" (page 91).

To add a user name to all physical drives:

1. Enter **chgacl** /A:<*user_name*> **Phys**

Example

```
C:\HORCM\Tool>chgacl /A:RMadmin Phys
PhysicalDrive0 -> \Device\Harddisk0\DR0
\\.\PhysicalDrive0 : changed to allow 'RMadmin'
PhysicalDrive1 -> \Device\Harddisk1\DR1
\\.\PhysicalDrive1 : changed to allow 'RMadmin'
PhysicalDrive2 -> \Device\Harddisk2\DR2
\\.\PhysicalDrive2 : changed to allow 'RMadmin'
PhysicalDrive3 -> \Device\Harddisk3\DR3
\\.\PhysicalDrive3 : changed to allow 'RMadmin'
```

To add a user name to one or more physical drives:

1. Enter: **chgacl** /A:<*user_name*> <*object_name*>…

Example 1 **chgacl /A:RMadmin \\.\PHYSICALDRIVE10**

Example 2 **chgacl /A:RMadmin \\.\PHYSICALDRIVE10 \\.\PHYSICALDRIVE9**

Allowing a user to use the "-x mount/umount" option

If the user needs to use the "-x mount/umount" option of RM commands (for example, **raidscan -x mount Z: \vol2**), add the user name to the volume access control list.

By default, **chgacl.exe** grants read, write and execute permissions. To restrict the permissions, see the section "Allowing different levels of access to a Device Object" (page 91).

To add a user name to all volumes:

1. Enter **chgacl** /A:<*user_name*> **Volume**

Example

```
C:\HORCM\Tool>chgacl /A:RMadmin Volume
Volume{5d0f64b9-3327-11d7-80b8-0002e307aa91} -> \Device\HarddiskVolume9
\\.\Volume{5d0f64b9-3327-11d7-80b8-0002e307aa91} : changed to allow 'RMadmin'
Volume{5d0f64b4-3327-11d7-80b8-0002e307aa91} -> \Device\HarddiskVolume6
\\.\Volume{5d0f64b4-3327-11d7-80b8-0002e307aa91} : changed to allow 'RMadmin'
Volume{5d0f64b8-3327-11d7-80b8-0002e307aa91} -> \Device\HarddiskVolume8
\\.\Volume{5d0f64b8-3327-11d7-80b8-0002e307aa91} : changed to allow 'RMadmin'
Volume{5d0f64b0-3327-11d7-80b8-0002e307aa91} -> \Device\HarddiskVolume2
\\.\Volume{5d0f64b0-3327-11d7-80b8-0002e307aa91} : changed to allow 'RMadmin'
Volume{5f7d3408-ae0b-11d8-a414-0002e307aa91} -> \Device\HarddiskVolume11
\\.\Volume{5f7d3408-ae0b-11d8-a414-0002e307aa91} : changed to allow 'RMadmin'
Volume{5d0f64ba-3327-11d7-80b8-0002e307aa91} -> \Device\HarddiskVolume10
\\.\Volume{5d0f64ba-3327-11d7-80b8-0002e307aa91} : changed to allow 'RMadmin'
Volume{60c51fc2-2fb0-11d7-80b2-806d6172696f} -> \Device\Floppy0
\\.\Volume{60c51fc2-2fb0-11d7-80b2-806d6172696f} : changed to allow 'RMadmin'
Volume{60c51fc3-2fb0-11d7-80b2-806d6172696f} -> \Device\CdRom0
```

To add a user name to one or more volumes:

1. Enter: **chgacl** /A:<*user_name*> <**Volume**{*GUID*}> …

Example **chgacl /A:RMadmin \\.\Volume{7dd3ba6b-2f98-11d7-a48a-806d6172696f}**

You can also use the \\?\\Volume{GUID} format used by Windows commands such as **mountvol**.

Allowing a user to use the "-x portscan" option

If the user needs to use the "-x portscan" option of RM commands (for example, **raidscan -x mount portscan port0,20**), add the user name to the SCSI port access list.

To add a user name to all SCSI ports:

1. Enter: **chgacl** /A:<*user_name*> **Scsi**

Example

```
C:\HORCM\test>chgacl /A:RMadmin Scsi
Scsi3: -> \Device\Scsi\sym_hi2
\\.\Scsi3: : changed to allow 'RMadmin'
Scsi4: -> \Device\Scsi\ql22001
\\.\Scsi4: : changed to allow 'RMadmin'
Scsi0: -> \Device\Ide\IdePort0
\\.\Scsi0: : changed to allow 'RMadmin'
Scsi1: -> \Device\Scsi\aic78xx1
\\.\Scsi1: : changed to allow 'RMadmin'
Scsi2: -> \Device\Scsi\sym_hi1
\\.\Scsi2: : changed to allow 'RMadmin'
```

To add a user name to one or more SCSI ports:

1. Enter: **chgacl** /A:<*user_name*> <*SCSIX*> …

Example 1 **chgacl /A:RMadmin Scsi0**

Example 2 **chgacl /A:RMadmin Scsi0 Scsi1 Scsi2**

Allowing different levels of access to a Device Object

chgacl.exe allows you to set a combination of read, write, execute or “all” access rights to a Device Object. If no permission parameter is given, **chgacl** grants “all” access to the Device Object.

An RM user needs read, write and execute rights to the command device in order to start a HORCM instance.

Enter: chgacl /A:<*user_name*> [/P:A-R-W-E] <*object_name*> ...

Example (Grant read and write access for the user horcm to all physical drives.)

chgacl /A:horcm /P:R-W Phys

Deleting a user name from the access control list of the Device Object

Caution: The first two commands below may delete the user's privileges to access the system drive (C:\).

To delete a user name from all physical drives:

1. Enter: chgacl /D:<*user_name*> Phys

To delete a user name from all volumes:

1. Enter: chgacl /D:<*user_name*> Volume

To delete a user name from one or more Device Objects:

1. Enter: chgacl /D: <*user_name*> <*object_name*> …

Restrictions

The ACL (Access Control List) for the Device Object is set every time Windows boots, so access must be reset every time the system starts up.

Use the Windows Scheduled Tasks application to run a batch file that adds the RM user name to the access list when system reboots.

To add a scheduled task (Windows 2000/Windows 2003):

1. Click **Start.** Click **Control Panel.**
2. Double-click **Scheduled Tasks.** Double-click **Add Scheduled Task**. The Scheduled Task Wizard apears.
3. Click **Next**.
4. Browse to the batch file. Select the batch file.

   A sample batch file is shown in this section.
5. Enter a name for the task. Select "When my computer starts"
6. Enter the system administrator password. Enter the password again.
7. Click **Next**. Click **Finish**.

You can redirect the output of the batch file by adding redirection in the batch file. Alternately, you can specify redirection in the Scheduled Task item’s Run field in advanced properties (for example, C:\HORCM\add_RM_user.bat > C:\HORCM\logs\add_RM_user.log).

Note: If you change the Windows system administrator’s password, this scheduled task will not execute. You will need to modify the task by entering the new password.

When new Device Objects (physical drives) are created, you must update user access for these devices.

RAID Manager user

Establishing the HORCM (/etc/horcmgr) startup environment

By default, the RM configuration definition file is stored in the “%SystemDrive%\windows” or “%SystemDrive%\WINNT” directory. A user with no system administrator privilege is denied writing to these directories. Therefore, the RM user needs to have his or her configuration file in some other directory and set the HORCM_CONF variable to that location.

Example 1

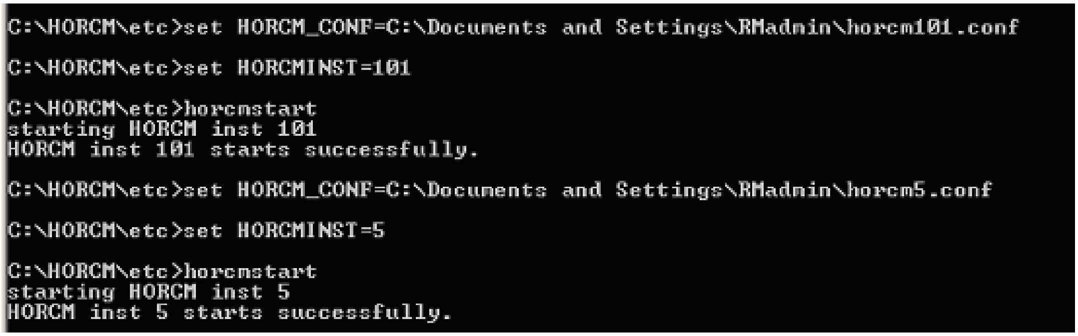
```
C:\HORCM\etc\>set HORCM_CONF=C:\Documents and
Settings\RMadmin\horcm10.conf

C:\HORCM\etc\>set HORCMINST=10

C:\HORCM\etc\>horcmstart
```

horcmstart must be executed without arguments.

Example 2 Starting two instances:



```
C:\HORCM\etc>set HORCM_CONF=C:\Documents and Settings\RMadmin\horcm101.conf

C:\HORCM\etc>set HORCMINST=101

C:\HORCM\etc>horcmstart
starting HORCM inst 101
HORCM inst 101 starts successfully.

C:\HORCM\etc>set HORCM_CONF=C:\Documents and Settings\RMadmin\horcm5.conf

C:\HORCM\etc>set HORCMINST=5

C:\HORCM\etc>horcmstart
starting HORCM inst 5
HORCM inst 5 starts successfully.
```

Restrictions

Restriction 1. A user without system administrator privilege is not allowed to use the Windows **mountvol** command (although some current Windows 2000 revisions allow a user to mountvol a directory to a volume). Therefore, a user cannot execute the "directory mount" option of RM commands using the **mountvol** command.

For example, "raidscan -x mount C:\test \vol5" will generate an error even though the system administrator has added the user name to the access list of the volume.

Restriction 2. The **inqraid** "gvinf" option uses the "%SystemDrive%:\windows\" or "%SystemDrive%:\WINNT\" directory. Therefore, the user executing this command will get some errors unless the system administrator grants the user write access to the directory.

RM version 01.15.02 and later allows the user to set the HORCM_USE_TEMP variable to prevents the errors.

Example

```
C:\HORCM\etc\>set HORCM_USE_TEMP=1
C:\HORCM\etc\>inqraid $Phys -gvinf
```

Restriction 3. The user using the RAID Manager commands and the user starting the HORCM instance must have the same system privileges. The following scenario is an example:

An administrator stated a HORCM instance 5. User A with “user” privileges will not be able to use any RAID Manager commands with HORCM instance 5. This is because even if user A has been added to the access control list for the devices, user A’s RM commands will not be able to communicate with the HORCM instance that was started by another user with different privileges.

RM version 01.15.02 and later allow the user to connect to HORCM by setting the “HORCM_EVERYCLI” environment variable.

Example:

```
C:\HORCM\etc\>set HORCM_CONF=C:\Documents and
      Settings\RMadmin\horcm10.conf
C:\HORCM\etc\>set HORCMINST=10
C:\HORCM\etc\>set HORCM_EVERYCLI=1
C:\HORCM\etc\>horcmstart
```

horcmstart must be executed without arguments.

Sample BAT file

A batch file can be useful in reestablishing user access after a system reboot.

```
@echo off
echo Run at
Date /T
Time /T
rem (1) Allow a user to use HORCM_CMD by adding a
user_name to the physical drive
rem (1a) Add an user name to all physical drives
rem usage: chgacl /A:<User_name> Phys
c:\horcm\tool\chgacl /A:RMadmin Phys
rem (1b) Add a user name to one or more physical drives
rem usage: chgacl /A:<User_name> <Object_name>…
c:\horcm\tool\chgacl /A:RMadmin \\.\PHYSICALDRIVE0
\\.\PHYSICALDRIVE1
rem (2) Allowing an user to use -x mount/umount option
of the RM commands
rem (2a) Add the user name to ALL volumes
rem usage: chgacl /A:<user_name> Volume
c:\horcm\tool\chgacl /A:RMadmin Volume
rem (2b) Add the user name to one or more volumes
rem usage: chgacl /A:<user_name> <Volume{GUID}>...
```

```
c:\horcm\tool\chgacl /A:RMadmin
\\.\Volume{7dd3ba6b-2f98-11d7-a48a-806d6172696f}
rem (3) Allow a user to use the "-x portscan" option of
RM commands
rem (3a) Add a user name0 to access list of ALL SCSI
ports
rem usage: chgacl /A:<user_name> Scsi
c:\horcm\tool\chgacl /A:RMadmin Scsi
rem (3b) Add the user name to Access List of one or more
SCSI ports
rem usage: chgacl /A:<user_name> <SCSIX>...
c:\horcm\tool\chgacl /A:RMadmin Scsi0 Scsi1
```

LUN Security Extension

HP StorageWorks LUN Security XP Extension is an optional feature that prevents hosts from writing to protected volumes. This is similar to the ORACLE Data Validation command, setting a protection attribute for a specified LU.

Guarding options

RAID Manager supports the following guarding options:

Hiding from inquiry commands. RM conceals the target volumes from SCSI Inquiry commands by responding "unpopulated volume" (0x7F) to the device type.

"SIZE 0" volume. RM replies to SCSI Read Capacity commands with "SIZE 0" for the target volume.

Read protection. RM protects volumes from reading by reponding with the the check condition of "Illegal function" (SenseKey=0x05, SenseCode=0x2200).

Write protection. RM protects volumes from writing by replying with "Write Protect" in the Mode sense header and by responding with the check condition of "Write Protect" (SenseKey=0x07 , SenseCode=0x2700).

S-VOL disabling. RM protects volumes from becoming and S-VOL during pair creation.

Commands affected

RAID Manager has options in the following three commands for setting and verifying guarding:

raidvchkset. This command sets the parameters for guarding specified volumes. (page 220)

raidvchkdsp. This command shows the guarding parameters for specified volumes, based on RM configuration file. (page 227)

raidvchkscan. This command shows the guarding parameter for specified volumes, based on the **raidscan** command. (page 233)

Notes and Restrictions

LUN Security Extension has the following restrictions.

File systems using LUN Security Extension

- In the case of UNIX file system volumes, the volumes must be mounted with the Read Only option by setting Open LDEV Guard after the volumes are unmounted.
- In the case of Windows2003 file systems, you have to use the “-x mount” and “-x umount” options of the above-cited RAID Manager commands.
- In the case of Windows NT or Windows 2000, Open LDEV Guard volumes set to Write Protect (read-only) mode cannot be used as NTFS or FAT file systems.

LVM(VxVM) and LUN Security Extension

When LVM volumes are to be used as Open LDEV Guard volumes, disable LUN Security Extension. Then LVM write commands may be issued to the volumes. Then re-enable Open LDEV Guard.

High Availability cluster server configurations

You should not use LUN Security Extension in HA environments, if HA cluster software will be writing metadata at regular intervals in order to confirm whether its disks are available or not.

Dynamic disk on Windows

LUN Security Extension volumes can not be used with the dynamic disk feature, because dynamic disk does not handle the volumes set to Write

Protect (read-only) mode. LUN Security Extension volumes must use Basic disk only.

License

The LUN Security Extension license key must be installed on the disk array.

Identifying Open LDEV Guard volumes

The inquiry page identifies LUN Security Extension volumes so the user does not use them as normal volumes.

Use “inqraid -fl” with the “-CLI” option. RM appends “*” to the device file name to identify a volume as a LUN Security Extension-protected volume:

Example `# ls /dev/rdsk/c57t4* | ./inqraid -CLI -fl`

```
DEVICE_FILE      PORT    SERIAL  LDEV CTG  C/B/12  SSID R:Group PRODUCT_ID
c57t4d0*         CL1-D    62496    32   -  s/P/ss  0004 5:01-03 OPEN-3
c57t4d1*         CL1-D    62496    33   -  s/P/ss  0004 5:01-01 OPEN-3
c57t4d2*         CL1-D    62496    34   -  s/P/ss  0004 5:01-02 OPEN-3
c57t4d3*         CL1-D    62496    35   -  s/P/ss  0004 5:01-03 OPEN-3
c57t4d4          CL1-D    62496    36   -  s/P/ss  0004 5:01-01 OPEN-3
c57t4d5          CL1-D    62496    37   -  s/P/ss  0004 5:01-02 OPEN-3
c57t4d6          CL1-D    62496    38   -  s/P/ss  0004 5:01-03 OPEN-3
```

4

RAID Manager command reference

This chapter describes the function and syntax for all RM commands.

General commands

RM Command	Description	UNIX	Windows NT/2000/ 2003	MPE/iX	Page
horcctl	Changes and displays the RM internal trace and control parameters.	•	•	•	105
horcmshutdown	Stops RM.	•	•	•	108
horcmstart	A shell script that starts RAID Manager.	•	•	•	109
horctakeover	*(CA sync/async only)* The host executing **horctakeover** takes ownership of a pair.	•	•	•	110
inqraid	Displays array information.	•		•	114
mkconf	Makes a configuration file.	•	•	•	125
paircreate	Creates a pair.	•	•	•	128
paircurchk	*(CA sync/async only)* Checks the consistency of the data on the secondary volume.	•	•	•	135
pairdisplay	Confirms the configuration of a specified pair.	•	•	•	138
pairevtwait	Event waiting command.	•	•	•	146
pairmon	Monitors a pair and reports changes in the pair status.	•	•	•	152
pairresync	Resynchronizes a pair.	•	•	•	155
pairsplit	Splits or suspends a pair.	•	•	•	163
pairsyncwait	Synchronization waiting command.	•	•	•	169
pairvolchk	Checks the attributes of a volume connected to the local or remote hosts.	•	•	•	175
raidar	Reports the I/O activity of a specified LDEV.	•	•	•	183
raidqry	Confirms the connection of the disk array and the open system host.	•	•	•	186
raidscan	Lists the SCSI/Fibre Channel port, target ID, LUN, and LDEV status.	•	•	•	189

Windows NT/2000/2003 commands

Windows NT/2000/2003 Command	Description	Page
drivescan	Displays the relationship between the hard disk number and physical drive.	202
env	Displays an environment variable.	204
findcmddev	Searches for the command device.	205
mount	Mounts a specified device.	206
portscan	Displays the physical device on a designated port.	209
setenv	Sets an environment variable.	211
sleep	Suspends execution.	212
sync	Flushes remaining unwritten data to the physical drive.	213
umount	Unmounts a specified device.	216
usetenv	Deletes an environment variable.	218

Data integrity check commands

Data Integrity Check Command	Description	Page
raidvchkset	Sets the parameters for validation checking on the specified volumes.	220
raidvchkdsp	Displays the parameters for validation checking on the specified volumes, based on the RM configuration file.	227
raidvchkscan	Displays the parameters for validation checking on the specified volumes, based on the **raidscan** command.	233

horcctl

Change and display RM internal trace and control parameters

Syntax

horcctl –h

horcctl { **–d | –c | –l** *level* | **–b** *m* **| –q | –s** *size(KB)* **| –t** *type* | **–z | –zx** }

horcctl –S

horcctl { **–D** | **–C** | **–u** *unitid* }

horcctl { **–ND** | **–NC** | **–g** *group* }

Arguments

–h Displays Help/Usage and version information.

–d Interprets the trace control arguments (**–l** *level*, **–b** *m*, **–s** *size(KB)*, **–t** *type*) following this argument as parameters for RM.

–c Interprets the trace control arguments (**–l** *level*, **–b** *m*, **–t** *type*) following this argument as parameters for the CA manager.

–l *level* Sets a trace level to the one specified in *level*. The effective level is between 0 and 15.

Specifying a negative value cancels the trace mode. A negative value **n** is specified as **– –n**, where **n** is any digit between 1 and 9. For example:

horcctl –l – –4

Level 4 is the default setting and must not be changed unless directed by an HP service representative.

Setting a trace level to other than 4 can impact problem resolution if a program failure occurs.

Levels 0 to 3 are for troubleshooting.

	When a change option to the trace control parameter is specified, a warning message is displayed, and the command enters interactive mode.
–b *m*	Sets a trace level.
	y specifies buffered mode.
	n specifies synchronous mode.
–q	Terminates interactive mode and exits this command.
–s *size(KB)*	Changes the default trace buffer size, which is 1 MB, in units of 1,024 bytes.
–t *type*	Sets a trace type to the one specified in type. When a type is specified, only traces of the specified type are output. A value between 0 and 511 can be specified. Two or more values can be specified.
–z	*(Not for use with MPE/iX)* This option makes this command enter interactive mode.
–zx	*(Not for use with MPE/iX or OpenVMS)* This option prevents using RM in interactive mode.
–S	Shuts down RM.
–D	Displays the RM command device name currently used by RM.
	If the command device is blocked due to the online maintenance (microprogram replacement) of the disk array, check the RM command device name before using this argument.
–C	Changes and displays the RM command device being used by the RM.
	If the command device is blocked due to the online maintenance (microprogram replacement) of the disk

	array, check the RM command device name before using this argument. By using this argument again after completion of the online maintenance (microprogram replacement), the previous command device is reinstated.
–u *unitid*	This argument is in effect when the **–D** or **–C** argument is specified. It specifies the unit ID of a command device as the target. If this argument is omitted, unit IDs are **0**.
–ND –g *group*	Displays the network address and port name being used by RM.
–NC –g *group*	Changes the network address and port name being used by RM and displays the changed network address name.
–g *group*	Specifies the group name written in the configuration definition file.

Description

The **horcctl** command is used for maintenance (except for the **–S, –D, –C, –ND, –NC**, and **–g** arguments) and troubleshooting. When it is issued, the internal trace control parameters of the RM manager and RM commands are changed and displayed.

If the arguments **–l** *level*, **–b** *m*, **–s** *size(KB)*, or **–t** *type* are not specified, the current trace control parameters are displayed.

Example

Entering **horcctl –D –C** identifies a protection mode command device by adding "*" to the device name as follows:

HP-UX

```
# horcctl -D
Current control device = /dev/rdsk/c0t0d0*
```

horcmshutdown

Stop RM instances

Syntax

horcmshutdown.sh [*inst*. . .]

horcmshutdown.exe [*inst*. . .]

Argument

inst	Indicates an instance number corresponding to the RM instance to be shut down. When omitted, the command uses the value stored in the **HORCMINST** environment variable.

Description

The **horcmshutdown** command is an executable for stopping RM instances.

horcmstart

Start RAID Manager instance

Syntax

HP-UX:
horcmstart.sh [*instance* . . .]

Windows NT/2000/**2003**
horcmstart.exe [*instance* . . .]

MPE/iX
MPE/iX POSIX cannot launch a daemon process from a POSIX shell. Therefore, you must execute RM as a job in the background by using the **STREAM** command.

Argument

instance	Specifies the RM instance number. If omitted, the command uses the value stored in the **HORCMINST** environment variable. If **HORCMINST** is not set, a null value for instance is used to set the environment variables (**HORCM_COMF**, **HORCM_LOG**, **HORCM_LOGS**).

Description

The **horcmstart** command is a executable which starts RM. If RM instance numbers are specified, this executable sets environment variables (**HORCM_CONF**, **HORCM_LOG**, **HORCM_LOGS**) and it starts RM instances.

Returned Values

The **horcmstart** command sets either of the following returned values in **exit()**, which allows you to check the execution results.

The command returns **0** upon normal termination.

A nonzero return indicates abnormal termination. For the cause of the error and details, see the execution logs.

Files

/HORCM/log*instance***/curlog/horcm_***hostname***.log**

/HORCM/log*instance***/horcm_***hostname***.log**

horctakeover

Take ownership of a pair *CA only*

Syntax

horctakeover –h

horctakeover { **–nomsg** | **–g** *group* **|** **–d** *pair_vol* | **–d**[**g**] *raw_device* [*MU#*] | **–d**[**g**] *seq# LDEV#* [*MU#*] | **–q** **|** **–S** | **–l** | **–t** *timeout* **|** **–z** **|** **–zx** }

Arguments

–d *pair_vol*

Specifies a paired volume name written in the configuration definition file. The command executes only for the specified paired volume.

–d[**g**] *raw_device* [*MU#*]

(HP-UX, Linux, Solaris, MPE/iX, and Windows NT/2000/2003 only) Searches the RM instance configuration file (local instance) for a volume that matches the specified *raw_device*. If a volume is found, the command is executed on the paired volume (**–d**) or group (**–dg**).

This option is effective without specification of the **–g** *group* option.

If the volume is contained in two groups, the command is executed on the first volume encountered. If *MU#* is not specified, it defaults to 0.

–d[**g**] *seq# LDEV#* [*MU#*]

Searches the RM instance configuration file (local instance) for a volume that matches the specified sequence number (*seq#*) and LDEV. If a volume is found, a command is executed on the paired logical volume (**–d**) or group (**–dg**). If the volume is contained in two groups, the command is executed on the first volume encountered. If *MU#* is not specified, it defaults to 0.

	seq# is the array serial number. *seq# LDEV#* can be specified in hexadecimal (by addition of 0*x*) or decimal.
–g *group*	Specifies a group name in the RM instance configuration file. The command executes for the entire group unless the **–d** *pair_vol* argument is specified.
–h	Displays Help/Usage and version information.
–l	Executes a PVOL-takeover, which enables the P-VOL for reading and writing by a local host without a remote host. This argument is used when the primary volume is in status or data fence, is not allowing writes, and is in PSUE or PDUB state. If the primary volume is in any other state, then a nop-takeover is executed. The target volume of a local host must be a P-VOL.
–nomsg	Suppresses messages to be displayed. It is used to execute this command from a user program. This argument must be specified at the beginning of the command arguments.
–q	Terminates interactive mode and exits this command.
–S	Selects and executes a SVOL-takeover. The target volume of a local host must be an S-VOL. If this argument is specified, the **–l** argument is invalid.
–t *timeout*	*(Asynchronous paired volumes only)* Specifies the maximum time in seconds to wait for a resynchronization of P-VOL to S-VOL delta data. If the timeout occurs, **EX_EWSTOT** is returned. This option is required for an asynchronous paired volume; it has no effect for a synchronous paired volumes.
–z	Makes this command enter interactive mode.

–zx *(Not for use with MPE/iX or OpenVMS)* Prevents using RM in interactive mode.

Description

The **horctakeover** meta command (contains many sub-commands) is used in conjunction with HA software, such as MC/Service Guard and CA. It selects and executes one of four actions, depending on the state of the paired volumes: nop-takeover, swap-takeover, SVOL-takeover, or PVOL-takeover.

See "Takeover-switch function" on page 324 for actions taken by **horctakeover**.

The table under the heading "HA control script state transitions" on page 304 lists state transitions resulting from the execution of **horctakeover** in HA control scripts.

Returned Values

The **horctakeover** command returns one of the following values in **exit()**.

Normal termination

0: nop-takeover (no operation)

1: swap-takeover was successfully executed

2: SVOL-takeover was successfully executed

3: PVOL-SMPL-takeover was successfully executed

4: PVOL-PSUE-takeover was successfully executed

5: SVOL-SSUS-takeover was successfully executed
(This returned value depends on microcode level.)

Abnormal termination

Other than the above. For the error cause and details, see the execution logs.

Execution Log File

After the SVOL-takeover is executed, if inconsistent volumes exist, they are displayed in the execution log file.

Error Codes

The table below lists specific error codes for the **horctakeover** command.

Category	Error Code	Error Message	Value
Volume status unrecoverable	EX_ENQVOL	Unmatched volume status within the group	236
	EX_INCSTG	Inconsistent status in group	229
	EX_EVOLCE	Pair volume combination error	235
	EX_VOLCUR	S-VOL currency error	225
	EX_VOLCUE	Local volume currency error	224
	EX_VOLCRE	Local and remote volume currency error	223
Timer recoverable	EX_EWSTOT	Timeout waiting for specified status	233

To recover from EX_EWSTOT:

If **horctakeover** fails with the EX_EWSTOT error, follow these steps:

1. Wait until the S-VOL state becomes SVOL_PSUS by using the return code of the **pairvolchk –g *group* –ss** command. Then, attempt the startup again from the HA control script.
2. Attempt to resynchronize the original P-VOL, based on the S-VOL, by using the **pairresync –g *group* –swaps –c *size*** command for a Fast Failback operation.

The operation in step 2 may fail with EX_CMDRJE or EX_CMDIOE. This will cause an ESCON link and/or site failure.

If this operation fails, the HA control script will report the following message:

> After a recovery from failure, please try the **pairresync –g *group* –swaps –c *size*** command.

To avoid the above recovery steps, the timeout value should be just less than (for example, 30 seconds) the startup timeout value for the HA control script.

inqraid

Display array information *HP-UX, Linux, Solaris, AIX, and MPE/iX only*

Syntax **inqraid** [**–h** | **quit** | **–inqdump** | **–fx** | **–find[c]** | *special_file* | **–CLI[W|WP|WN]** | **–sort** | **–CM** | **–inst** | **–gvinf** | **–svinf** | **–fv** | **–fp** | **fg** | **-gblba]**

Arguments

–h Displays Help/Usage.

–quit Terminates from waiting for STDIN and exits this command.

–inqdump Displays SCSI information in hexadecimal dump format.

–fx Displays the LDEV number in hexadecimal format.

–find[c] Using device special file names provided via STDIN, this option displays information about the corresponding configuration file volume groups through the use of the inquiry and pairdisplay commands.

This option requires that the **HORCMINST** variable be defined in the command execution environment.

The **–find** option employs the following options of the **pairdisplay** command:

(BC)

pairdisplay –d <Seq#> <LDEV#> 0 1 2 –l [–fx] [–CLI] 2>/dev/null

(CA)

pairdisplay –d <Seq#> <LDEV#> –l [–fx] [–CLI] 2>/dev/null

The **–findc** option employs the following options of the **pairdisplay** command, and presents the output in an easily parsed CLI format.

(BC)

pairdisplay -d <Seq#> <LDEV#> <MU#> -fd -CLI 2>/dev/null

(CA)

pairdisplay -d <Seq#> <LDEV#> -fd -CLI 2>/dev/null

The Seq# and LDEV# are provided via the SCSI Inquiry command.

This option requires the HORCMINST variable to be defined.

special_file Specifies a device special file name as an argument to the command. If no argument is specified, the command waits for input from STDIN. For STDIN file specification information, see Appendix D, "STDIN file formats" .

–CLI Specifies structured output for Command Line Interface parsing. The column data is aligned in each row. The delimiters between columns are either a space or –.

–CLI[W|WP|WN] *(Not for use with Tru64 or Digital UNIX)* Displays the WWN (World Wide Name) and LUN in CLI format.

–sort[–CM] Sorts the target devices in Serial#, LDEV# order.

The **–sort–CM** option displays the command devices listed in the horcm.conf file.

A unitID is displayed with the Serial#.

When two or more command devices exist, this option will show multiple device files linked to a command device (an LDEV).

–inst *(MPE/iX only)* Used to make a device special file such as /dev/ldev***** by getting an LDEV number (ldev in

MPE/iX terminology) from the “LDEV–” field in the **dstat** command.

–gvinf	(*Windows NT/2000/2003 only*) Retrieves the LUN signature and volume layout information by way of a raw device file provided via STDIN or arguments. This information is saved to a system disk file with the format \WindowsDirectory\VOL**ssss_llll.**ini where **ssss** is the array serial number and **llll** is the LDEV#. Normally, this option is used to save the LUN signature and volume layout information after it has been written created (and before a paircreate).
–svinf[=PTN]	*(Windows NT/2000/2003 only)* Uses SCSI Inquiry to get the Serial# and LDEV# created by **–gvinf** of the RAID for the target device, and sets the signature and volume layout information in file VOLssss_llll.ini to the target device. This option will complete correctly even if the Harddisk# is changed by the operating system. The signature and volume layout information is managed by the Serial# and LDEV# of RAID. The **–svinf=PTN** option specifies a string pattern to select only the pertinent output lines being provided from STDIN. This option returns **0** upon normal termination. A nonzero return indicates abnormal termination.
–fv	(*Windows NT/2000/2003 only*) Displays the Volume{GUID} via $Volume in wide format.
–fp	Shows an Oracle validation volume with the **-CLI** option by appending “*” to the device file name.
-fg	Displays a LUN in the host view by finding a host group for XP 128 and XP 1024 arrays.

-gblba	(*Windows NT/2000/2003 only*) Displays usable LBA on physical drives.

Description

The **inqraid** command displays the relationship between a host device special file and an actual physical drive in the disk array.

Fields

`CLX-Y`	Displays the port number of the disk array.
`Ser`	Displays the production (serial#) number of the disk array.
`LDEV`	Displays an LDEV# within the disk array.
`CA`	Displays the attribute (PVOL/SVOL/SMPL) of a volume as CA.
`BC`	Displays the attribute (PVOL/SVOL/SMPL) of a volume as BC.
`Group`	Displays the physical position of a LDEV in relation to a RAID group in the disk array.
`SSID`	Displays the Sub System ID of an LDEV in the disk array.
`CTGID`	Displays the CT group ID when the LDEV has been specified as an async-CA P-VOL or S-VOL.
`CHNO`	(Linux only) Displays the Linux channel number of the device adapter.
`TID`	(Linux only) Displays the target ID of the hard disk connected to the device adapter port. See Appendix , “Fibre Channel addressing” .
`LUN`	(Linux only) Displays the logical unit number of the hard disk that connects on the device adapter port.
`DEVICE_FILE`	Displays the device file name.
`M`	Displays the MU# of local and remote volumes.
`PairVol`	Displays the paired volume name (dev_name) within the group defined in the configuration file.
`P/S`	Displays the volume attribute (P-VOL, S-VOL, or Simplex).

`Stat`	Displays the status of the paired volume.
`R_DEVICE`	Displays the device file name of the remote half of the pair.
`LK`	Indicates the results of a check on the paired volume connection path.
`PORT`	Displays the disk array port number.
`C/B/12`	Corresponds to CA volume/BC volume/BC MU#1,2. Displays attributes where: P = P-VOL S = S-VOL s = SMPL
`R:Group`	Displays the physical position of an LDEV in relation to a RAID group in the disk array.
`PRODUCT_ID`	Displays the product ID field in the STD inquiry page.
`PWWN`	Displays the port WWN.
`NWWN`	Displays the Node WWN.
`AL`	(Not supported for the Tru64 or Digital UNIX **–CLIWP** and **–CLIWN** options) Displays the AL_PA of the port.

Examples

Examples using the **–find** option:

Linux

```
ls /dev/sd* | inqraid -find
Group   PairVol(L/R) (Port#,TID,LU),Seq#,LDEV#.P/S,Status,Fence, Seq#,P-LDEV# M
oradb   oradev2(L)  (CL2-N , 3,  2) 8071   22..SMPL  ---- ------,-----  ----  -
->/dev/sdc
```

HP-UX

```
# echo /dev/rdsk/c23t0d0 /dev/rdsk/c23t2d3 | ./inqraid -find
Group   PairVol(L/R) (Port#,TID,LU-M),Seq#,LDEV#.P/S,Status, Seq#,P-LDEV# M
horc1   dev00(L)    (CL2-J , 0,  0-0)61456  192..S-VOL SSUS,-----    193  -
->/dev/rdsk/c23t0d0
Group   PairVol(L/R) (Port#,TID,LU-M),Seq#,LDEV#.P/S,Status, Seq#,P-LDEV# M
horc1   dev10(L)    (CL2-J , 2,  3-0)61456  209..S-VOL SSUS,-----    206  -
->/dev/rdsk/c23t2d3
```

Examples using the **–findc** option:

HP-UX

```
# echo /dev/rdsk/c23t0d0 /dev/rdsk/c23t2d3 | ./inqraid -findc
DEVICE_FILE     M Group    PairVol    P/S   Stat  R_DEVICE     M P/S   Stat LK
c23t0d0         0 horc1    dev00      S-VOL SSUS  c23t0d1      0 P-VOL PSUS OK
/dev/rdsk/c23t0d0[1] -> No such on the group
/dev/rdsk/c23t0d0[2] -> No such on the group
DEVICE_FILE     M Group    PairVol    P/S   Stat  R_DEVICE     M P/S   Stat LK
c23t2d3         0 horc1    dev10      S-VOL SSUS  c23t2d2      0 P-VOL PSUS OK
/dev/rdsk/c23t2d3[1] -> No such on the group
/dev/rdsk/c23t2d3[2] -> No such on the group

# echo /dev/rdsk/c23t0d0 /dev/rdsk/c23t2d3 | ./inqraid -findc -CLI
DEVICE_FILE     M Group    PairVol    P/S   Stat  R_DEVICE     M P/S   Stat LK
c23t0d0         0 horc1    dev00      S-VOL SSUS  c23t0d1      0 P-VOL PSUS OK
c23t2d3         0 horc1    dev10      S-VOL SSUS  c23t2d2      0 P-VOL PSUS OK
```

An example using the **–CLI** option:

Linux

```
# ls /dev/sd* | ./inqraid -CLI
DEVICE_FILE     PORT    SERIAL  LDEV CTG  C/B/12  SSID R:Group PRODUCT_ID
sdh             CL2-B    30053    23   2  S/P/ss  0004 5:02-01 OPEN-3
sdi             CL2-B    30053    14   -       -     -       - OPEN-3-CM
sdj                 -        -     -   -       -     -       - -
```

An example using the **–CLIW** option:

```
# echo /dev/rdsk/c23t0d0 /dev/rdsk/c23t0d1 | ./inqraid -CLIW
DEVICE_FILE     WWN              AL PORT   LUN    SERIAL  LDEV PRODUCT_ID
c23t0d0         500060e802f01018 C3 CL2-J    0     61456   192 OPEN-3
c23t0d1         500060e802f01018 C3 CL2-J    1     61456   193 OPEN-3

DEVICE_FILE     WWN              AL PORT   LUN    SERIAL  LDEV PRODUCT_ID
c0t2d3          5000E000E0005000 3E CL1-A   20     30015  2054 OPEN3-CVS
```

An example using the **–sort –CM** option:

HP-UX

```
#ioscan -fun | grep rdsk | ./inqraid -sort -CM -CLI
HORCM_CMD
#dev_name               dev_name                dev_name
#UnitID 0 (Serial# 30012)
/dev/rdsk/c0t3d0        /dev/rdsk/c1t2d1
#UnitID 1 (Serial# 30013)
/dev/rdsk/c2t3d0
```

An example using the **–inst** option:

MPE/iX

```
shell/iX> callci dstat | ./inqraid -inst -CLI
DEVICE_FILE      PORT    SERIAL  LDEV CTG  C/B/12  SSID R:Group PRODUCT_ID
ldev100          CL1-L   35013    19   -  s/s/ss  0004 5:01-01 OPEN-3
ldev101          CL1-L   35013    35   -       -     -       - OPEN-3-CM
```

An example using the **–gvinf** option follows. This example saves the volume information for all physical drives.

```
D:\HORCM\etc>inqraid $Phys -gvinf -CLI
\\.\PhysicalDrive0:
# Harddisk0        -> [VOL61459_448_DA7C0D91] [OPEN-3          ]
\\.\PhysicalDrive1:
# Harddisk1        -> [VOL61459_449_DA7C0D92] [OPEN-3          ]
\\.\PhysicalDrive2:
# Harddisk2        -> [VOL61459_450_DA7C0D93] [OPEN-3          ]
```

An example using the **–svinf=PTN** follows. This example writes signature/volume information to LUNs identified by "Harddisk" in the output of the pairdisplay command.

```
D:\HORCM\etc>pairdisplay -l -fd -g URA
Group   PairVol(L/R) Device_File   M ,Seq#,LDEV#.P/S,Status, Seq#,P-LDEV# M
URA     URA_000(L)   Harddisk3     0 61459  451..S-VOL SSUS,-----    448  -
URA     URA_001(L)   Harddisk4     0 61459  452..S-VOL SSUS,-----    449  -
URA     URA_002(L)   Harddisk5     0 61459  453..S-VOL SSUS,-----    450  -

D:\HORCM\etc>pairdisplay -l -fd -g URA | inqraid -svinf=Harddisk
[VOL61459_451_5296A763] -> Harddisk3        [OPEN-3          ]
[VOL61459_452_5296A760] -> Harddisk4        [OPEN-3          ]
[VOL61459_453_5296A761] -> Harddisk5        [OPEN-3          ]
```

Additional Information

If you create an SVOL with the "Noread" option and reboot the Windows 2000/2003 system, the system will be unable to create a Device object (\Device\HarddiskVolume#) and Volume {GUID} for that SVOL. A

Device object (\Device\HarddiskVolume#) and Volume{GUID} can be created, using the **-svinf** option to the **inqraid** command (on a suspended SVOL).

\Device\HarddiskVolume#(number) is assigned in sequential order by the **-svinf** option. This number will be valid as long as the system configuration does not change.

Use the **–svinf -sort** option to cause signature writes to occur in LDEV# order as follows.

```
D:\HORCM\etc>echo hd5 hd4 hd3 | inqraid -svinf -sort
[VOL61459_451_5296A763] -> Harddisk3        [OPEN-3           ]
[VOL61459_452_5296A760] -> Harddisk4        [OPEN-3           ]
[VOL61459_453_5296A761] -> Harddisk5        [OPEN-3           ]
```

An example using the **–fv** option.

```
C:\HORCM\etc>inqraid -CLI $Vol -fv
DEVICE_FILE                                                  PORT    SERIAL  LDEV
CTG  H/M/12  SSID R:Group PRODUCT_ID
Volume{cec25efe-d3b8-11d4-aead-00c00d003b1e}\Vol3\Dsk0      CL2-D    62496   256
-       -     -       - OPEN-3-CVS-CM
```

An example using the **–fp** option:

```
# ls /dev/rdsk/c57t4* | ./inqraid -CLI -fp
DEVICE_FILE     PORT    SERIAL  LDEV CTG  C/B/12  SSID R:Group PRODUCT_ID
c57t4d0*        CL1-D    62496    32   -  s/P/ss  0004 5:01-03 OPEN-3
c57t4d3*        CL1-D    62496    35   -  s/P/ss  0004 5:01-03 OPEN-3
c57t4d4         CL1-D    62496    36   -  s/P/ss  0004 5:01-01 OPEN-3
c57t4d5         CL1-D    62496    37   -  s/P/ss  0004 5:01-02 OPEN-3
```

The following examples display the relationship between a special file and the actual physical drive in the disk array, by using the **inqraid** and system commands.

HP-UX

```
# ioscan -fun | grep rdsk | ./inqraid
/dev/rdsk/c0t2d0 ->[HP] CL2-D Ser = 30053 LDEV =  8 [HP  ] [OPEN-3 ]
                    CA = SMPL  BC[MU#0 = SMPL MU#1 = SMPL MU#2 = SMPL]
/dev/rdsk/c0t2d1 ->[HP] CL2-D Ser = 30053 LDEV =  9 [HP  ] [OPEN-3]
                    CA = SMPL  BC[MU#0 = SMPL MU#1 = SMPL MU#2 = SMPL]
/dev/rdsk/c0t4d0 ->[HP] CL2-D Ser =  30053  LDEV = 14 [HP] [OPEN-3 CM]
```

Linux

```
# ls /dev/sd* | ./inqraid
/dev/sdg ->CHNO = 0 TID =  1 LUN =  6
           [HP] CL2-B Ser =  30053 LDEV =  22 [HP    ] [OPEN-3    ]
           CA = SMPL  BC[MU#0 = SMPL MU#1 = SMPL MU#2 = SMPL]
/dev/sdh ->CHNO = 0 TID =  1 LUN =  7
           [HP] CL2-B Ser =  30053 LDEV =  23 [HP   ] [OPEN-3     ]
           CA = SMPL BC[MU#0 = SMPL MU#1 = SMPL MU#2 = SMPL]
/dev/sdi ->CHNO = 0 TID =  4 LUN =  0
           [HP] CL2-B Ser =  30053 LDEV =  14  [HP      ] [OPEN-3-CM ]
```

Solaris

```
# ls /dev/rdsk/* | ./inqraid
/dev/rdsk/c0t2d1 -> [HP] CL2-D Ser = 30053  LDEV = 9  [HP    ] [OPEN-3    ]
                    CA = P-VOL  BC[MU#0 = SMPL MU#1 = SMPL MU#2 = SMPL]
                    RAID5[Group  2- 1] SSID = 0x0008 CTGID = 3
/dev/rdsk/c0t4d0 -> [HP] CL2-D Ser = 30053  LDEV = 14 [HP   ] [OPEN-3-CM  ]
```

MPE/iX

```
shell/iX>ls /dev/* | ./inqraid 2>/dev/null
/dev/ldev009 -> [HP] CL2-D Ser = 30053 LDEV = 9 [HP   ] [OPEN-3       ]
                   CA = P-VOL  BC[MU#0 = SMPL MU#1 = SMPL MU#2 = SMPL]
                  RAID5[Group  2- 1] SSID = 0x0008 CTGID = 3
/dev/cmddev  -> [HP] CL2-D Ser = 30053 LDEV = 14 [HP  ] [OPEN-3-CM   ]
```

AIX

```
# lsdev -C -c disk | grep hdisk | ./inqraid
hdisk1 -> [HP] CL2-D Ser =   30053 LDEV =   9 [HP      ] [OPEN-3          ]
          CA = P-VOL  BC[MU#0 = SMPL MU#1 = SMPL MU#2 = SMPL]
          RAID5[Group  2- 1] SSID = 0x0008 CTGID = 3
hdisk2 -> [HP] CL2-D Ser =   30053 LDEV =  14 [HP      ] [OPEN-3-CM       ]
```

Additional Information

If the **lsdev** command does not show the TID and LUN (for example, 2F-00-00-2,0) on the column output for the devices as shown below, then the **inqraid** command and **–d**[**g**] *raw_device* option for all commands will be unable to find a target device.

```
# lsdev -C -c disk
hdisk1  Defined   04-02-01     Other FC SCSI Disk Drive
```

This occurs when a Fibre Channel adapter and device driver are different (for example, an Emulex adapter with an AIX driver).

Windows NT/2000/2003

```
C:\HORCM\etc> echo hd1-2 | inqraid ( or inqraid hd1-2 )
Harddisk 1 -> [HP] CL2-D Ser =  30053 LDEV = 9 [HP  ] [OPEN-3        ]
                   CA = P-VOL  BC[MU#0 = SMPL MU#1 = SMPL MU#2 = SMPL]
                   RAID5[Group  2- 1] SSID = 0x0008 CTGID = 3
Harddisk 2 -> [HP] CL2-D Ser =  30053 LDEV = 14 [HP  ] [OPEN-3-CM    ]
```

Tru64

```
# ls /dev/rdisk/dsk* | ./inqraid
/dev/rdisk/dsk10c -> [HP] CL2-D Ser = 30053 LDEV = 9  [HP] [OPEN-3   ]
                     CA = P-VOL  BC[MU#0 = SMPL MU#1 = SMPL MU#2 = SMPL]
                      RAID5[Group  2- 1] SSID = 0x0008 CTGID = 3
/dev/rdisk/dsk11c -> [HP] CL2-D Ser = 30053 LDEV = 14 [HP] [OPEN-3-CM]
```

DYNIX/ptx

```
# dumpconf -d | grep sd | ./inqraid
sd1 -> [HP] CL2-D Ser =   30053 LDEV =   9 [HP      ] [OPEN-3         ]
         CA = P-VOL  BC[MU#0 = SMPL MU#1 = SMPL MU#2 = SMPL]
         RAID5[Group  2- 1] SSID = 0x0008 CTGID = 3
Sd2 -> [HP] CL2-D Ser =   30053 LDEV =  14 [HP      ] [OPEN-3-CM      ]
```

mkconf

Make a configuration file

Syntax **mkconf.sh** { **–g** *group* | **–m** *MU#* | **–i** *inst#* | **–s** *service* | **–a** }

Windows NT/2000/2003 or OpenVMS only:
mkconf.exe { **–g** *group* | **–m** *MU#* | **–i** *inst#*] | **–s** *service* | **–a** | **–c** *drive#* }

Arguments

(none)	Using the **mkconf** command without any arguments displays help/usage information.
–g *group*	Specifies the dev_group name to be used within the newly created configuration file. If not specified, **VG** will be used.
–m *MU#*	Specifies the mirror descriptor for BC volumes. CA volumes do not specify a mirror descriptor.
–i *inst#*	Specifies the instance number for RM.
–s *service*	Specifies the service name to be used in the newly created configuration file. If not specified, **52323** will be used as a default.
–a	Used to add a new volume group within the newly created configuration file.
–c *drive#*	*(Windows NT/2000/2003 only)* Specifies the range of drive numbers to be searched for existing command devices. If not specified, **hd0-99** will be used as the default.
–c *<DKA#-#*	*(OpenVMS only)* Specifies the range of drive numbers to be searched for existing command devices. If not specified, **DKA0-10000 DGA0-10000** will be used as the default.

Description The **mkconf** command is used to make a configuration file from a special file (raw device file) provided via STDIN. It executes the following steps:

1. Make a configuration file containing only the HORCM_CMD section by executing **inqraid –sort –CM –CLI**.
2. Start a RM instance without a HORCM_DEV and HORCM_INST section, which is just enough to execute the **raidscan** command for the next step.
3. Make a configuration file including the HORCM_DEV and HORCM_INST sections by executing **raidscan –find conf** using a special file (raw device file) provided via STDIN. For STDIN file specification information, see Appendix D, "STDIN file formats" .
4. Start a RM instance using the newly created configuration file.
5. Execute **raidscan –find verify** to verify the correspondence between host device files and the newly created configuration file.

The configuration file is created with the name **horcm*.conf** within the current directory. A RM log directory is created with the name **log*** within the current directory.

You may have to modify the *ip_address* and *service* parameters within the newly created configuration file as the need arises.

Example This example demonstrates the usage of the **mkconf** command and the resulting configuration file.

HP-UX

```
# cd /tmp/test
# cat /etc/horcmperm.conf | /HORCM/usr/bin/mkconf.sh -g ORA -i 9 -m 0
starting HORCM inst 9
HORCM inst 9 starts successfully.
HORCM Shutdown inst 9 !!!
A CONFIG file was successfully completed.
starting HORCM inst 9
HORCM inst 9 starts successfully.
DEVICE_FILE             Group     PairVol      PORT     TARG   LUN M    SERIAL  LDEV
/dev/rdsk/c23t0d0       ORA       ORA_000      CL2-J       0     0 0     61456   192
/dev/rdsk/c23t0d1       ORA       ORA_001      CL2-J       0     1 0     61456   193
/dev/rdsk/c23t0d2       ORA       ORA_002      CL2-J       0     2 0     61456   194
/dev/rdsk/c23t0d3       ORA       ORA_003      CL2-J       0     3 0     61456   195
/dev/rdsk/c23t0d4       ORA       ORA_004      CL2-J       0     4 0     61456   256
/dev/rdsk/c23t0d5       ORA       ORA_005      CL2-J       0     5 0     61456   257
/dev/rdsk/c23t0d6       ORA       ORA_006      CL2-J       0     6 0     61456   258
/dev/rdsk/c23t0d7       -         -            -           -     - 0     61456   259
```

```
HORCM Shutdown inst 9 !!!
Please check '/tmp/test/horcm9.conf','/tmp/test/log9/curlog/horcm_*.log', and
modify 'ip_address & service'.

# ls
horcm9.conf  log9
# vi *.conf
```

Configuration file:

```
# Created by mkconf.sh on Mon Jan 22 17:59:11 JST 2001
HORCM_MON
#ip_address         service         poll(10ms)      timeout(10ms)
localhost           52323                 1000              3000

HORCM_CMD
#dev_name                dev_name                dev_name
#UnitID 0 (Serial# 61456)
/dev/rdsk/c23t3d0

HORCM_DEV
#dev_group          dev_name        port#     TargetID     LU#     MU#
# /dev/rdsk/c23t0d0    SER =    61456  LDEV =  192 [ FIBRE FCTBL = 4 ]
ORA                 ORA_000         CL2-J           0        0       0
# /dev/rdsk/c23t0d1    SER =    61456  LDEV =  193 [ FIBRE FCTBL = 4 ]
ORA                 ORA_001         CL2-J           0        1       0
# /dev/rdsk/c23t0d2    SER =    61456  LDEV =  194 [ FIBRE FCTBL = 4 ]
ORA                 ORA_002         CL2-J           0        2       0
# /dev/rdsk/c23t0d3    SER =    61456  LDEV =  195 [ FIBRE FCTBL = 4 ]
ORA                 ORA_003         CL2-J           0        3       0
# /dev/rdsk/c23t0d4    SER =    61456  LDEV =  256 [ FIBRE FCTBL = 4 ]
ORA                 ORA_004         CL2-J           0        4       0
# /dev/rdsk/c23t0d5    SER =    61456  LDEV =  257 [ FIBRE FCTBL = 4 ]
ORA                 ORA_005         CL2-J           0        5       0
# /dev/rdsk/c23t0d6    SER =    61456  LDEV =  258 [ FIBRE FCTBL = 4 ]
ORA                 ORA_006         CL2-J           0        6       0
# ERROR [CMDDEV] /dev/rdsk/c23t0d7    SER =    61456  LDEV =  259 [ OPEN-3-CM ]

HORCM_INST
#dev_group         ip_address      service
ORA                localhost       52323
```

paircreate

Create a pair relationship

Syntax

paircreate –h

paircreate { **–nomsg** | **–g** *group* | **–h** | **–d** *pair_vol* | **–d**[**g**] *raw_device* [*MU#*] | **–d**[**g**] *seq# LDEV* [*MU#*] | **–q** | **–vr** | **–vl** | **–f** *fence* [CTGID] | **–m** *mode* |
–c *size* | **–nocopy** | **–split** | **–z** | **–zx** }

Arguments

–c *size*

Specifies the number of tracks that are concurrently copied. The number can range from 1 to 15. The default value of 3 is used if this argument is not specified.

–d *pair_vol*

Specifies a paired volume name written in the configuration definition file. The command executes only for the specified paired volume.

–d[**g**] *raw_device* [*MU#*]

(HP-UX, Linux, Solaris, MPE/iX, AIX, and Windows NT/2000/2003 only) Searches the RM configuration file (local instance) for a volume that matches the specified raw device. If a volume is found, the command is executed on the paired volume (**–d**) or group (**–dg**).

This option is effective without specification of the **–g** *group* option.

If the specified raw_device is listed in multiple device groups, this applies to the first one encountered.

–d[**g**] *seq# LDEV#* [*MU#*]

Searches the RM instance configuration file (local instance) for a volume that matches the specified sequence # and LDEV. If a volume is found, the command is executed on the paired logical volume (**–d**) or group (**–dg**).

	This option is effective without specification of the **–g** *group* option.
	If the specified LDEV is listed in multiple device groups, this applies to the first one encountered.
	seq # LDEV # can be specified in a hexadecimal (by addition of 0*x*) or decimal.
–f *fence* [CTGID]	*(CA only)* Specifies a data-consistency level.
	Valid values: **async** *CTGID (Async CA only)* **data** **status** **never**
	CTGID (CT group ID) is assigned automatically, but the **async** option terminates with **EX_ENOCTG** when beyond the maximum number of CT groups.
	Maximum number: XP256 16 (0-15) XP512 64 (0-63) XP1024 128 (0-127) XP12000 256 (0-255)
	The *CTGID* option forces creation of paired volumes for a given CTGID group.
–g *group*	Specifies the group to be paired; the group name is specified in the **HORCM_DEV** section of the RM instance configuration file.
	The command executes for the entire group unless the **–d** *pair_vol* argument is specified.
–h	Displays Help/Usage, and version information.
–m *mode*	The following modes may be specified:

noread *(BC only)* Specifies that the S-VOL is unreadable while the paired volumes are in the PAIR state. This mode is useful for hiding S-VOLs. By default, the S-VOL is readable even when in the PAIR state.

cyl *(XP1024/XP12000 CA only)* Specifies that a bitmap table is managed with each cylinder on CA volumes.

trk *(XP1024/XP12000 CA only)* Specifies that a bitmap table is managed with each track on CA volumes.

If **cyl** or **trk** are not specified, the default bitmap table identified below is used.

RAID	CA Volumes	Default Bitmap table
XP1024	OPEN-3/9	Track
	OPEN-E/L/M	Cylinder
Others	Don't care	Cylinder

If there is not enough shared memory to maintain track level information, error EX_CMDRJE is returned.

dif *(BC only)* Use at paircreate to cause the SVOL bitmap table (used to create a Differential backup) to designate all tracks changed since paircreate.

inc *(BC only)* Use at paircreate to cause the SVOL bitmap table (used for incremental backup) to designate all tracks changed since the last re-synchronization

grp *(BC only)* (Only available on XP128 and XP1024 arrays.) Use at paircreate to group specified pairs into a consistency group, allowing a consistent split of multiple devices at exactly the same point in time. This applies when doing a split using the pairsplit -g <group> command (except **-S** or **-E** option).

A CTGID (CT Group ID) is assigned automatically if

you do not specify the CTGID option in the command. If CTGID is not specified and the maximum number of CT groups already exist, an EX_ENOCTG error will occur. Therefore, the CTGID option can forcible assign a volume group to an exisiting CTGID.

–nocopy *(CA only)* Creates paired volumes without copying data. The data consistency of SMPL volumes is assured by the user.

–nomsg Suppresses messages that are displayed when this command is executed. If used, this argument must be specified at the beginning of a command argument.

–q Terminates interactive mode and exits this command.

–split (*BC only*) Splits the paired volume after completing the pairing process.

-split works differently based on the microcode version:

XP256 microcode 52-46-xx or over
XP512 microcode 01-10-00/xx or over
XP1024 and XP12000:

This option will return immediately with the PVOL_PSUS and SVOL_COPY state changes. The SVOL state will be changed to SVOL_SSUS after all data is copied.

XP256 microcode 52-46-yy or under
XP512 microcode 01-10-00/xx or under:

After the command is executed, the volume status will be PVOL_COPY and SVOL_COPY. The PVOL and SVOL states will be changed to PVOL_PSUS and SVOL_SSUS after all data is copied. **–vl or –vr** Required. Specifies the direction of the P-VOL to S-VOL relationship.

Specifies which set of volumes, **r** (remote) or **l** (local), is the primary (P-VOL) volume. Local disks are determined by how the **HORCMINST** environment variable is set.

–vl specifies the volumes defined by the local RM instance as the primary volumes.

–vr specifies the volumes defined by the remote RM instance as the primary volumes while the local RM instance controls the secondary volume.

–z	Makes this command enter interactive mode.
–zx	*(Not for use with MPE/iX or OpenVMS)* Prevents using RM in interactive mode.

Description

The **paircreate** command establishes a primary to secondary pair relationship between volumes. This command generates a new paired volume from SMPL volumes. The default action pairs a logical group of volumes as defined in the RM instance configuration file.

HP-UX

Caution *Before issuing this command, ensure that the secondary volume is not mounted on any HP-UX system. If the secondary volume is mounted during the **paircreate** command, change the pair status to SMPL, unmount the secondary volume, and reissue the **paircreate** command.*

MPE/iX

Caution *Before issuing this command, ensure that the secondary volume is not mounted on any MPE/iX system. If it is, VSCLOSE that volume set and de-configure the LDEVs using IOCONFIG, the online device configuration utility program.*

Returned Values

This command sets either of the following returned values in **exit()**, which allows you to check the execution results.

The command returns **0** upon normal termination.

A nonzero return indicates abnormal termination. For the error cause and details, see the execution logs.

(*CA only*) If the target volume is under maintenance, this command can't report copy rejection if an error occurs.

Examples

Establish a BC pairing between the volumes in group vg01. The volumes in the local instance are used as the P-VOLs.

paircreate –g vg01 –vl

Create a BC volume pair that corresponds to disk device **/dev/rdsk/c5t1d0** as the S-VOL (using the remote instances volume as the P-VOL):

paircreate –d /dev/rdsk/c5t1d0 –vr

If the volume is part of multi–volume group, only the volume specified by the **–d** argument is set up as a pair.

Create a BC group pair out of the group that contains the seq# 35611 and LDEV 35. Use the volumes defined by the local instance as the P-VOLs:

paircreate –d 35611 35 –vl

In this example, all volumes that are part of the group that contains this LDEV are put into the PAIR state. Because MU# was not specified, it defaulted to 0.

Error Codes

The table lists specific error codes for the **paircreate** command.

Category	Error Code	Error Message	Value
Volume status unrecoverable	EX_ENQVOL	Unmatched volume status within the group	236
	EX_INCSTG	Inconsistent status in group	229
	EX_INVVOL	Invalid volume status	222
	EX_INVSTP	Invalid pair status	228
	EX_ENQSIZ	Unmatched volume size for paring	212
Resource unrecoverable	EX_ENOCTG	Not enough CT groups in the RAID	217
	EX_ENXCTG	No CT groups left for OPEN Vol use	215

paircurchk

Check S-VOL data consistency *CA only*

Syntax

paircurchk –h

paircurchk { **–g** *group* **| –d** *pair_vol* **| –d**[**g**] *raw_device* [*MU#*] **| –d**[**g**] *seq# LDEV#* [*MU#*] **| –h** | **–nomsg | –q | –z | –zx** }

Arguments

–d *pair_vol*

Specifies a paired volume name written in the configuration definition file. The command executes only for the specified paired volume.

–d[**g**] *raw_device* [*MU#*]

(HP-UX, Linux, Solaris, MPE/iX, AIX, and Windows NT/2000/2003 only) Searches the RM configuration file (local instance) for a volume that matches the specified raw device. If a volume is found, the command is executed on the paired volume (**–d**) or group (**–dg**).

This option is effective without specification of the **–g** *group* option.

If the specified raw_device is listed in multiple device groups, this applies to the first one encountered.

–d[**g**] *seq# LDEV#* [*MU#*]

Searches the RM instance configuration file (local instance) for a volume that matches the specified sequence # and LDEV. If a volume is found, the command is executed on the paired logical volume (**–d**) or group (**–dg**).

This option is effective without specification of the **–g** *group* option.

If the specified LDEV is listed in multiple device groups, this applies to the first one encountered.

seq # LDEV # can be specified in hexadecimal (by the addition of 0*x*) or decimal.

–g *group* Specifies a group name in the RM instance configuration file.

The command executes for the entire group unless the **–d** *pair_vol* argument is specified.

–h Displays Help/Usage and version information.

–nomsg Suppresses the messages displayed when this command is executed. It is used to execute this command from a user program.

If used this argument must be specified at the beginning of command arguments.

–q Terminates interactive mode and exits this command.

–z Makes this command enter interactive mode.

–zx *(Not for use with MPE/iX or OpenVMS)* Prevents using RM in interactive mode.

Description

The **paircurchk** command displays pairing status in order to allow the operator to verify the completion of pair generation or pair resynchronization. This command is also used to confirm the paired volume connection path (physical link of paired volume to the host).

The granularity of the reported data is based on the volume or group.

Returned Values

This command sets either of the following returned values in **exit()**, which allows you to check the execution results.

Normal termination

0. (OK. Data is consistent.)

Abnormal termination:

Other than 0. (For the error cause and details, refer to the execution logs.)

Output Fields

`Group` — The group name (*dev_group*) described in the configuration definition file.

`Pair vol` — The paired volume name (*dev_name*) within a group described in the configuration definition file.

`Port targ# lun#` — The port number, target ID, and LUN described in the configuration definition file.

`LDEV#` — The LDEV number.

`Volstat` — The attribute of a volume.

`Status` — The status of the paired volume.

`Fence` — The fence level of the paired volume.

`To be` — The data consistency of the secondary volume.

Example

```
# paircurchk -g oradb
Group   Pair vol   Port targ#   lun#  LDEV#   Volstatus    Status  Fence     To be...
oradb   oradb1     CL1-A  1     5     145     S-VOL        PAIR    NEVER     Analyzed
oradb   oradb2     CL1-A  1     6     146     S-VOL        PSUS    STATUS    Suspected
```

Error Codes

The table lists specific error codes for the **paircurchk** command.

Category	Error Code	Error Message	Value
Volume status unrecoverable	EX_VOLCUR	S-VOL currency error	225

pairdisplay

Confirm pair configuration

Syntax

pairdisplay –h

pairdisplay { **–g** *group* **| –d** *pair_vol* **| –d**[**g**] *raw_device* [*MU#*] | **–d**[**g**] *seq# LDEV#* [*MU#*] **| –c |** [**–l**] **| –f**[**x**|**c**|**d**|**m**|**e**] **| –CLI** | **–FCA** | **-FBC** [*MU#*] | **–h** | **–q** | **–z | –m** *mode* }

Arguments

[**–l**] — (*Optional*) Displays the local paired volume status.

–c — When this option is specified, the paired volume connection path (physical link from paired volume to the host) is checked and only illegally paired volumes are displayed.

If this option is not specified, the status of the specified volumes are displayed without checking their path to the host.

–CLI — Specifies structured output for Command Line Interface parsing. The column data is aligned in each row. The delimiters between columns are either a space or –.

–d *pair_vol* — Specifies a paired volume name written in the configuration definition file. The command executes only for the specified paired volume.

–d[**g**] *raw_device* [*MU#*]

(HP-UX, Linux, Solaris, Windows NT/2000/2003, AIX, and MPE/iX only) Searches the RM instance configuration file (local instance) for a volume that matches the specified *raw_device*. If a volume is found, the command is executed on the paired volume (**–d**) or group (**–dg**). If the volume is contained in two groups, this command executes for the first volume encountered only. If *MU#* is not specified, it defaults to 0.

–d[g] *seq# LDEV#* [*MU#*]

Searches the RM instance configuration file (local instance) for a volume that matches the specified sequence number (*seq#*) and LDEV. If a volume is found, a command is executed on the paired logical volume (**–d**) or group (**–dg**). If the volume is contained in two groups, this command executes for the first volume encountered only. If *MU#* is not specified, it defaults to 0.

seq# is the array serial number. *seq# LDEV#* can be specified in hexadecimal (by addition of 0*x*) or decimal.

–f[**x**|**c**|**d**|**m**]

–fx displays the LDEV number in hexadecimal.

–fc displays the copy operation rate and a completion percentage. Detects and displays the status (PFUL, PFUS) and confirms **SSWS** state as an indication of **SVOL_SSUS-takeover**. This option is also used to display the copy operation progress, the Side File percentage or the BITMAP percentage for asynchronous pair volumes.

–fd displays the relationship between the Device_File and the paired volumes, based on the group (as defined in the local instance configuration definition file). If Device_File column shows **unknown** to either the local or the remote host (instance), then it shows a volume that is not recognized on the current host, and pair operations are rejected (except the local option **–l** in protection mode).

–fm displays the Bitmap mode.

-fe displays the serial number and LDEV number of the external LUNs mapped to the LDEV and additional informations for the pair volume. This option is invalid if **-m all** or **-m cas** are specified.

Example (CA)

```
# pairdisplay -g horc0 -fdxe

Group ...LDEV#.P/S,Status,Fence,Seq#,P-LDEV# M CTG JID AP EM E-Seq# E-LDEV#
horc0 ...    41.P-VOL PAIR ASYNC ,63528    40 -   0   -  2  -      -       -
horc0 ...    40.S-VOL PAIR ASYNC ,-----    41 -   0   -  -  -      -       -
```

Example (BC)

```
# pairdisplay -g horc0 -fe
Group ...  Seq#,LDEV#.P/S,Status, Seq#,P-LDEV# M CTG CM EM E-Seq# E-LDEV#
horc0 ... 63528    65.P-VOL COPY,63528      64 -   -  N  -      -       -
horc0 ... 63528    64.S-VOL COPY,-----      65 -   -  N  -      -       -
```

CTG. For CA Asyc, displays the CT group ID, and "Fence" is shown as ASYNC. For BC, displays the CT group ID only at time time volumes are split.

JID. Reserved.

AP. The number of active paths in to the P-VOL. If this is not known, "-" will be displayed.

CM. Copy mode. "N" is for non snapshot. "S" is for snapshot.

EM. External connection mode. "H" represents a mapped E-lun hidden from the host. "V" represents a mapped E-lun visible to the host. "-" represents an unmapped E-lun.

E-Seq#: The production (serial) number of the external LUN, "-" represents and unknown number.

E-LDEV#: The LDEV# of the external LUN. "-" represents and unknown number.

–FCA Used to forcibly specify a cascading CA volume in a combination CA and BC environment. The **–l** option is specified, this option displays a cascading CA volume on a local host (near site). If no **–l** option is specified,

then this option displays a cascading CA volume on a remote host (far site).

–FBC [*MU#*] — Used to forcibly specify a cascading BC volume in a combination BC and CA environment. If the **–l** option is specified, this option displays a cascading BC volume on a local host (near site). If no **–l** option is specified, then this option displays a cascading BC volume on a remote host (far site).

The **–m** *mode* option cannot be specified.

–g *group* — Specifies a group name in the RM instance configuration file. Group names are defined in the **HORCM_DEV** section of the RM instance configuration file.

The command executes for the entire group unless the **–d** *pair_vol* argument is specified.

–h — Displays Help/Usage, and version information.

–l — Displays the paired volume status of the local host (which issues this command).

–m *mode* — Displays the status of mirror descriptors for specified pair logical volumes and volume pair status. The cascading volume *mode* option can be designated as **cas** or **all**.

The **cas** option displays only MU#0 (plus used MU#s). The **all** option displays all MU#s whether used or not.

–q — Terminates interactive mode and exits this command.

–z — Makes this command enter interactive mode.

–zx — *(Not for use with MPE/iX or OpenVMS)* Prevents using RM in interactive mode.

Description

The **pairdisplay** command displays the pairing status of a volume or group of volumes. This command is also used to confirm the configuration of paired volumes.

Volumes are defined in the **HORCM_DEV** section of the RM instance configuration files.

Output Fields

`Group`	The group name (*dev_group*) described in the configuration definition file.
`PairVol(L/R)`	The paired volume name (*dev_name*) of the group described in the configuration definition file. `L` is the local host. `R` is the remote host.
`P,T#,L#`	(*CA only*) The port number, target ID, and LUN described in the configuration definition file.

`Port#`
`ID`
`LU-M`
	(*BC only*) The port number, target ID, LUN, and MU# described in the configuration definition file.

`Seq#`	The disk array serial number.
`LDEV#`	The LDEV number.
`P/S`	The (P-VOL, S-VOL) attribute of a volume.
`Status`	The status of the paired volume.
`Fence`	*(CA only)* The fence level of the paired volume.
`P-LDEV#`	Displays the LDEV# of a primary pair partner.
M = **“W”**	**P-VOL and PSUS state:** indicates that S-VOL is suspending with R/W enabled. **S-VOL and SSUS state:** indicates that S-VOL has been altered since entering SSUS state.
M = **"-"**	**S-VOL and SSUS state:** indicates that S-VOL has NOT been altered since entering SSUS state.

P-VOL and PSUS state: indicates that S-VOL is suspending with Read only.

M = **"N"** **COPY/RCPY/PAIR/PSUE state:** indicates that the volume is Read-disabled.

M = **"C"** Indicates a bitmap table is managed with each cylinder.

M = **"T"** Indicates a bitmap table is managed with each track.

M = **"U"** Indicates a bitmap is unknown.

% The table below shows percentages for Async-CA, Sync-CA, and BC.

State Volume	**Async-CA**			**Sync-CA**			**BC**			
	COPY	PAIR	OTHER	COPY	PAIR	OTHER	COPY	PAIR	PVOL_PSUS SVOL_COPY	OTHER
PVOL	CR	SF	BM	CR	BM	BM	CR	CR	BM	CR
SVOL		SF	BM		BM	BM	CR	CR	CR	CR

`CR` Shows the copy operation rate.

`BM` Shows the (identical) percentage of PVOL & SVOL BITMAPs.

`SF` Shows the Side File percentage for each CT group in relation to a 100% full side file in cache.

The following is an arithmetic expression using the High Water Mark (HWM) as 100% of a side file space:

HWM (%) = 30 / Side File space (30 to 70) * 100

Examples

(BC Only)

```
# pairdisplay -g oradb
Group  Pair Vol(L/R) (Port#,TID,LU-M),Seq#, LDEV#...P/S,   Status, Seq#,  P-LDEV# M
oradb  oradb1(L)     (CL1-A,  1, 1-0) 30053 18   ...P-VOL PAIR    30053  19       -
oradb  oradb1(R)     (CL1-D,  1, 1-0) 30053 19   ...S-VOL PAIR     ----  18       -
```

(CA only)

```
# pairdisplay -g oradb  -fcx
Group  Pair Vol(L/R) (P,T#,L#),    Seq#, LDEV# P/S,  Status, Fence,  %,  P-LDEV# M
oradb  oradb1(L)     (CL1-B, 1,0) 1234  64    P-VOL PAIR    Never,  75  C8       -
oradb  oradb1(R)     (CL1-A, 1,0) 5678  C8    S-VOL PAIR    Never,  --- 64       -
```

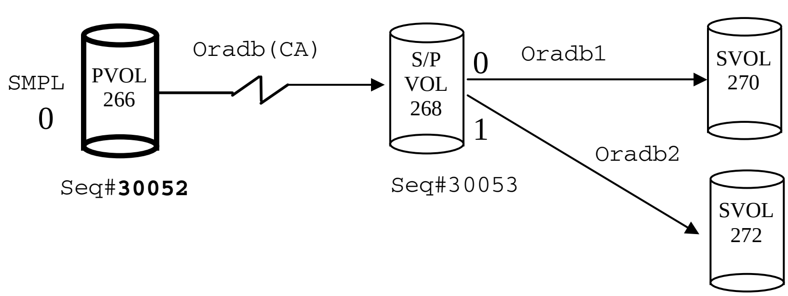
The following shows the output when using **–CLI**. The format aligns the column data in each row, making it easier to parse. The delimiters between columns are either a space or –.

```
Group   PairVol L/R  Port# TID LU-M  Seq#  LDEV#  P/S   Status  Seq#  P-LDEV# M
homrcf1 deva0 L      CL1-D  3   5 0  30053  271   P-VOL PAIR    30053  263    -
homrcf1 deva1 L      CL1-D  3   5 1  30053  271   SMPL    -       -     -     -
homrcf1 deva2 L      CL1-D  3   5 2  30053  271   SMPL    -       -     -     -
```

The following example uses **–fd**.

```
# pairdisplay -g oradb -fd
Group   PairVol(L/R) Device_File  M ,Seq#,LDEV#.P/S,Status, Seq#,P-LDEV# M
oradb   oradev1(L)   c0t3d0       0 35013   17..P-VOL COPY, 35013    18  -
oradb   oradev1(R)   c0t3d1       0 35013   18..S-VOL COPY, 35013    17  -
```

The following figure shows cascading volumes, using the **–m** option.



The following example uses **–m cas**. This option displays the cascaded volumes at either end of the designated CA pair that are assigned either BC bitmaps (LU0-0) or CA bitmaps (LU0).

```
# pairdisplay -g oradb -m cas
Group   PairVol(L/R) (Port#,TID,LU-M), Seq#,  LDEV#.P/S,  Status, Seq#,  P-LDEV# M
oradb   oradev1(L)   (CL1-D , 3,  0-0) 30052  266...SMPL  ----,   -----  ----    -
oradb   oradev1(L)   (CL1-D , 3,  0)   30052  266...P-VOL COPY,   30053  268     -
oradb1  oradev11(R)  (CL1-D , 3,  2-0) 30053  268...P-VOL COPY,   30053  270     -
oradb2  oradev21(R)  (CL1-D , 3,  2-1) 30053  268...P-VOL PSUS,   30053  272     W
oradb   oradev1(R)   (CL1-D , 3,  2)   30053  268...S-VOL COPY,   -----  266     -
```

The following examples use **–m all.** This argument displays all bitmaps, whether in use or not, that can be employed with the volumes involved in the designated CA pair.

```
# pairdisplay -g oradb -m all
Group   PairVol(L/R) (Port#,TID,LU-M), Seq#,  LDEV#.P/S,  Status, Seq#,  P-LDEV#  M
oradb   oradev1(L)   (CL1-D , 3,  0-0) 30052  266...SMPL  ----,   -----   ----    -
-----   -----(L)     (CL1-D , 3,  0-1) 30052  266...SMPL  ----,   -----   ----    -
-----   -----(L)     (CL1-D , 3,  0-2) 30052  266...SMPL  ----,   -----   ----    -
oradb   oradev1(L)   (CL1-D , 3,  0)   30052  266...P-VOL PAIR,   30053    268    -
oradb1  oradev11(R)  (CL1-D , 3,  2-0) 30053  268...P-VOL COPY,   30053    270    -
oradb2  oradev21(R)  (CL1-D , 3,  2-1) 30053  268...P-VOL PSUS,   30053    272    W
-----   -----(R)     (CL1-D , 3,  2-2) 30053  268...SMPL  ----,   -----   ----    -
oradb   oradev1(R)   (CL1-D , 3,  2)   30053  268...S-VOL COPY,   -----    266    -
```

A MU# of **0** (not 0-0) designates a CA volume.

```
# pairdisplay -d /dev/rdsk/c0t3d0 -l -m all
Group   PairVol(L/R) (Port#,TID,LU-M), Seq#,  LDEV#.P/S,  Status, Seq#,  P-LDEV# M
oradb   oradev1(L)   (CL1-D , 3,  0-0) 30052  266...SMPL  ----,   -----   ----   -
-----   -----(L)     (CL1-D , 3,  0-1) 30052  266...SMPL  ----,   -----   ----   -
-----   -----(L)     (CL1-D , 3,  0-2) 30052  266...SMPL  ----,   -----   ----   -
oradb   oradev1(L)   (CL1-D , 3,  0)   30052  266...P-VOL PAIR,   30053    268   -
```

pairevtwait

Wait for event completion

Syntax **pairevtwait –h**

pairevtwait { **–g** *group* | **–d** *pair_vol* | **–d**[**g**] *raw_device* [*MU#*] **|** **–d**[**g**] *seq# LDEV#* [*MU#*] | **–FCA** | **-FBC** [*MU#*] | **–h** | **–s** *status* . . .| **–t** *timeout* [*interval*] | **–nowait** | **–l** | **–nomsg** | **–q** | **–z** }

Arguments

–d *pair_vol*

Specifies a paired volume name written in the configuration definition file. The command executes only for the specified paired volume.

–d[**g**] *raw_device* [*MU#*]

(HP-UX, Linux, Solaris, Windows NT/2000/2003, AIX, and MPE/iX only) Searches the RM configuration file (local instance) for a volume that matches the specified raw device. If a volume is found, the command is executed on the paired volume (**–d**) or group (**–dg**).

This option is effective without specification of the **–g** *group* option.

If the volume is contained in two groups, the command is executed on the first volume encountered. If MU# is not specified, it defaults to 0.

–d[**g**] *seq# LDEV#* [*MU#*]

Searches the RM instance configuration file (local instance) for a volume that matches the specified sequence # and LDEV. If a volume is found, the command is executed on the paired logical volume (**–d**) or group (**–dg**).

This option is effective without specification of the **–g** *group* option.

If the volume is contained in two groups, the command is executed on the first volume encountered only.

–FCA	Used to forcibly specify, for event waiting, a CA P-VOL that is also a BC P-VOL. If the **–l** option is specified, then the status of a cascading CA volume on a local host (near site) is tested. If no **–l** option is specified, then this option tests the status of a cascading CA volume on a remote host (far site). The target CA volume must be SMPL or P-VOL.
–FBC [*MU#*]	Used to forcibly specify, for event waiting, a CA P-VOL that is also a BC P-VOL. If the **–l** option is specified, then this option tests the status of a cascading BC volume on a local host (near site). If no **–l** option is specified, then this option tests the status of a cascading BC volume on a remote host (far site). The target BC volume must be SMPL or P-VOL.
–g *group*	Specifies a group name in the RM instance configuration file. The command executes for the entire group unless the **–d** *pair_vol* argument is specified.
–h	Displays Help/Usage and version information.
–l	When this command cannot use a remote host because it is down, this option allows execution of this command by a local host only. The target volume of a local host must be SMPL or P-VOL.
–nomsg	Used to suppress messages when this command is executed from a user program. This option must be specified at the beginning of the command arguments.

–nowait	Causes the pairing status is reported immediately. When this option is specified, the **–t** and **–s** options are ignored.
–q	Terminates interactive mode and exits this command.
–s *status*	Specifies the waiting status (SMPL, COPY [including RCPY], PAIR, PSUS, or PSUE). If two or more statuses are specified following **–s**, waiting occurs according to the logical OR of the specified statuses. This argument is not valid when the **–nowait** argument is specified.

–t *timeout* [*interval*]

Specifies the amount of time, in one-second intervals, to wait for the specified state. If [*interval*] is not specified, the, the default value is used. This argument is not valid when the **–nowait** argument is specified. If the interval is specified as greater thatn 1999999, a warning message is displayed.

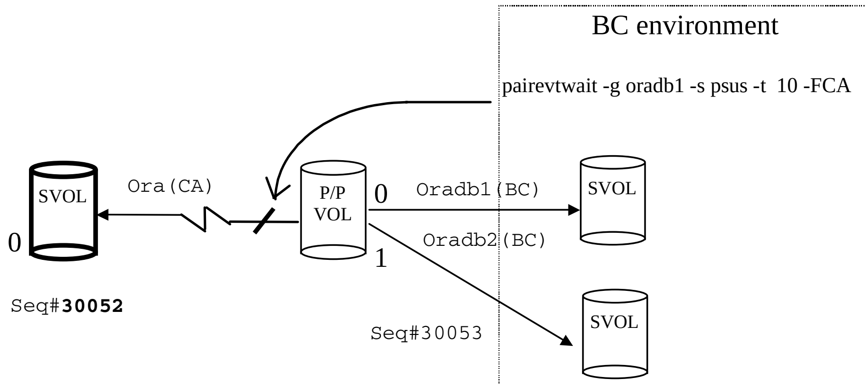
–z	Makes this command enter interactive mode.
–zx	*(Not for use with MPE/iX or OpenVMS)* Prevents using RM in interactive mode.

Description

The **pairevtwait** command waits for completion of the **paircreate** and **pairresync** commands. It also checks the status of those commands. It waits (sleeps from the viewpoint of the process) until the paired volume status becomes identical to a specified status. When the desired status has been achieved, or the timeout period has elapsed, the command exits with the appropriate return code.

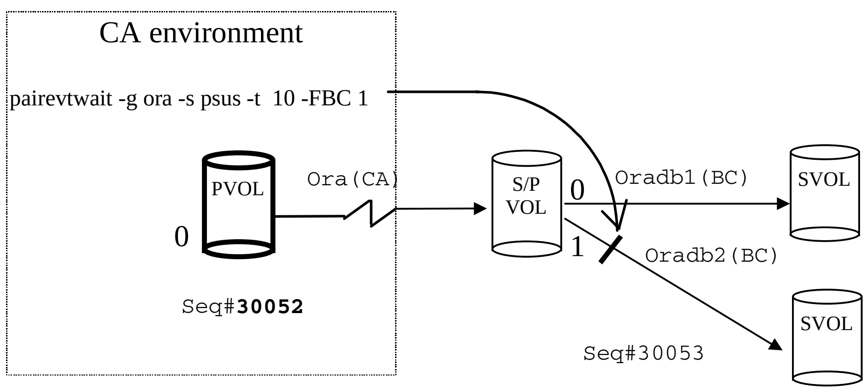
CA Operation

The figure below shows the usage of the **–FCA** option. In the example, the command waits up to 10 seconds for the designated CA pair to reach PSUS state by specifying the BC group name to which it is cascaded.



BC Operation

The figure below shows the usage of the **–FBC** option. In the example, the command tests the status of the intermediate S-VOL/P-VOL (MU#1) through a specified pair group in a CA environment.



Returned Values

This command sets one of the following returned values in **exit()**, which allows you to check the execution results.

When the –nowait argument is specified:

Normal termination

1: The status is SMPL

2: The status is COPY or RCPY

3: The status is PAIR

4: The status is PSUS

5: The status is PSUE

Abnormal termination

Other than 6 to 127 (For the error cause and details, see the execution logs.)

When the –nowait argument is not specified:

Normal termination

0: The status is identical to the specified status.

Abnormal termination

Other than 0 to 127. (For the error cause and details, see the execution logs.)

Error Codes

The table lists specific error codes for the **pairevtwait** command.

Category	Error Code	Error Message	Value
Volume status unrecoverable	EX_ENQVOL	Unmatched volume status within the group	236
	EX_INCSTG	Inconsistent status in group	229
	EX_INVVOL	Invalid volume status	222
	EX_EVOLCE	Pair volume combination error	235
	EX_EWSUSE	Pair suspended at WAIT state	234
Timer recoverable	EX_EWSTOT	Timeout waiting for specified status	233
	EX_EWSLTO	Timeout waiting for specified status on the local host	232

pairmon

Report pair transition status

Syntax

pairmon –h

pairmon { **–D** | **–allsnd** | **–q** | **–resevt | –nowait | –s** *status* . . . | **–z** }

Arguments

–allsnd	Reports all pairing status transition events.
–D	Selects the default report mode. One event is reported (and cleared) if there is pairing status transition information to be reported. If there is no information, the command waits. The report modes consists of three flags: **–allsnd**, **–resevt**, and **–nowait**.
–h	Displays Help/Usage and version information.
–nowait	When this option is specified, the pairing status is reported immediately.
–q	Terminates interactive mode and exits this command.
–resevt	Reports events if there is pairing status transition information and then resets all the events.
–s *status*	Specifies the waiting status (SMPL, COPY [including RCPY], PAIR, PSUS, or PSUE). If two or more statuses are specified following **–s**, waiting occurs according to the logical OR of the specified statuses. This argument is not valid when the **–nowait** argument is specified.
–z	Makes this command enter interactive mode.
–zx	*(Not for use with MPE/iX or OpenVMS)* Prevents using RM in interactive mode.

Description

The **pairmon** command is sent to the RM (daemon) to report the transition of pairing status. When an error or status transition is detected, this command outputs an error message.

Events exist on the pair state transfer queue for RM. Resetting an event correlates to the deletion of one or all events from the pair state transfer queue. If the command does not reset, the pair state transfer queue is maintained.

The table below shows the results of **pairmon** argument combinations.

–D	–nowait	–resevt	–allsnd	Actions
–D				When RM does not have an event, this option waits until an event occurs. If more events exist, it reports one event. **This option clears the event that it reports.**
Invalid			–allsnd	When RM does not have an event, this option waits until an event occurs. If more than one event exists, it reports all events without clearing them.
Invalid		–resevt		When RM does not have an event, this option waits until an event occurs. If multiple events exist, it reports one event and resets (clears) all events.
Invalid		–resevt	–allsnd	When RM does not have an event, this option waits until an event occurs. If multiple events exist, it reports all events and then clears them.
Invalid	–nowait			When RM does not have an event, this option reports “no event” immediately. If multiple events exist, it reports one event. **This option resets (clears) the event which it reported.**
Invalid	–nowait		–allsnd	When RM does not have an event, this option reports “no event” immediately. If more events exist, then it reports all events.

(continued)

–D	–nowait	–resevt	–allsnd	Actions
Invalid	–nowait	–resevt		When RM does not have an event, this option reports “no event” immediately. If multiple events exist, then it reports one event and resets all events.
Invalid	–nowait	–resevt	–allsnd	When RM does not have an event, this option reports “no event” immediately. If multiple events exist, then it reports all events and resets them.

Output Fields

`Group` The group name (dev_group) defined in the configuration definition file.

`Pair vol` The paired volume name (dev_name) within the group, defined in the configuration definition file.

`Port`
`targ#`
`lun#` The port number, TargetID, and LUN defined in the configuration definition file.

`LDEV#` The LDEV number.

`Oldstat` The “old” pair status when the status of a pair volume has changed.

`Newstat` The “new” pair status when the status of a pair volume has changed.

`code` The internal status code when the status of a pair volume has changed.

Example

```
# pairmon  -allsnd   -nowait
Group  Pair vol    Port     targ#   lun#    LDEV#   Oldstat    code -> Newstat   code
oradb  oradb1      CL1-A    1       5       145     SMPL       0x00 -> COPY      0x01
oradb  oradb2      CL1-A    1       6       146     PAIR       0x02 -> PSUS      0x04
```

pairresync

Resynchronize a pair

Syntax

pairresync –h

pairresync { **–nomsg** | **–g** *group* | **–d** *pair_vol* | **–d**[**g**] *raw_device* [*MU#*] | **–d**[**g**] *seq# LDEV#* [*MU#*] | **–c** *size* | **–FCA** | **–FBC** | **–h** | **–l** | **–nomsg** | **–q** | **–restore** | **–swap**[**s**|**p**] | **–z** | **–zx** }

Arguments

–c *size*

Used to specify the number of tracks (1 to 15) copied in parallel. If omitted, the default is the value used at time of **paircreate**.

–d *pair_vol*

Specifies a paired volume name written in the configuration definition file. The command executes only for the specified paired volume.

–d[**g**] *raw_device* [*MU#*]

(HP-UX, Linux, Solaris, Windows NT/2000/2003, AIX, and MPE/iX only) Searches the RM configuration file (local instance) for a volume that matches the specified raw device. If a volume is found, the command is executed on the paired volume (**–d**) or group (**–dg**).

This option is effective without specification of the **–g** *group* option.

If the specified *raw_device* is listed in multiple device groups, this applies to the first one encountered.

–d[**g**] *seq# LDEV#* [*MU#*]

Searches the RM instance configuration file (local instance) for a volume that matches the specified sequence # and LDEV. If a volume is found, the command is executed on the paired logical volume (**–d**) or group (**–dg**).

This option is effective without specification of the **–g** *group* option.

	If the specified LDEV is listed in multiple device groups, this applies to the first one encountered.
	seq # LDEV # can be specified in hexadecimal (by the addition of 0*x*) or decimal format.
–FCA	Used to resync a CA P-VOL that is also a BC P-VOL. If the **–l** option is specified, this option resynchronizes a cascading CA volume at the local host (near site). If no **–l** option is specified then this option re-synchronizes a cascading CA volume at the remote host (far site).
	The target CA volume must be a P-VOL and the **–swap**[**s | p**] option cannot be specified.
–FBC [*MU#*]	Used to forcibly resync a BC pair whose P-VOL is a CA S-VOL. If the **–l** option is specified, this option resynchronizes a cascading BC volume on a local host (near site). If no **–l** option is specified, this option resynchronizes a cascading BC volume on a remote host (far site).
	The BC volume designated by the MU# must be a P-VOL.
–g *group*	Specifies a group name to resynchronize. The group names are defined in the **HORCM_DEV** section of the RM instance configuration file.
	The command is executed for the entire group unless the **–d** *pair_vol* argument is specified.
–h	Displays Help/Usage and version information.
–l	Allows a local host (connected to the P-VOL) to resynchronize P-VOL to S-VOL even though the remote host is down.

–nomsg	Used to suppress messages when this command is executed from a user program. This option must be specified at the beginning of the command arguments
–q	Terminates interactive mode and exits this command.
–restore	*(BC only)* (*Optional*) Copies differential data from the secondary volume to the primary volume. (The S-VOL must not be mounted on any host while this command is executing.) If the **–restore** option is not specified, the P-VOL is copied to the S-VOL. If the **–restore** option is used, the P-VOL must not be host mounted while the command is executing. If the target volume is currently under maintenance, this command cannot execute copy rejection in case of trouble. If mode 80 is turned ON at the SVP, this option takes time to complete the S-VOL to P-VOL copy (**pairevtwait** will signal its completion). However, at completion, the P-VOL and S-VOL LUNs will still point to the same LDEVs (physical disks) as before. If mode 80 is turned OFF at the SVP, this option takes virtually no time (**pairevtwait** still signals completion) because the P-VOL LUN will now be associated with the LDEVs that used to be associated with the S-VOL (and vice versa). This allows virtually immediate P-VOL access while it continues to copy to the S-VOL in the background. To avoid noticing a performance change after using this option, the P-VOL and S-VOL should use the same RAID type and the same speed disks (for example, 10k RPM).

–swap[**s**|**p**]

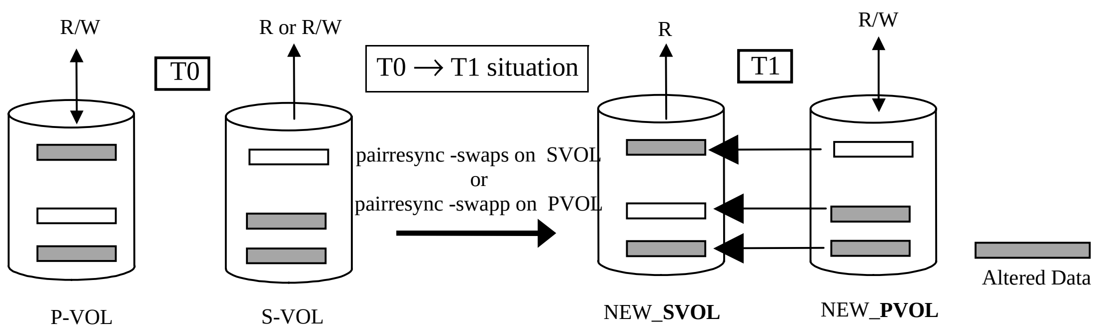
(*CA only*) The **–swaps** option is executed from the S-VOL when there is no host on the P-VOL side to help. A remote host must be connected to the S-VOL. Typically executed in PSUS (SSWS) state (after a **horctakeover**) to facilitate fast failback without requiring a full copy.

Unlike **–swaps**, **–swapp** requires the cooperation of hosts at both sides. It is the equivalent of **–swaps**, executed from the original P-VOL side.

For both **–swaps** and **–swapp**, the delta data from the original S-VOL becomes dominant and is copied to the original P-VOL, then the P-VOL/S-VOL designations are swapped.

The application can continue to run at the remote failover site during this operation. At completion, the remote failover site will own the P-VOL. When desired, a very fast **horctakeover** will allow a fast failback of the application from the recovery site to the original site.

The following figure describes the **–swap**[**s**|**p**] operation. The left side of the diagram shows T0 (time zero) for both the P-VOL and S-VOL, before command execution. The right side shows T1, after command execution.



–z	Makes this command enter interactive mode.
–zx	*(Not for use with MPE/iX or OpenVMS)* Prevents using RM in interactive mode.

Description

The **pairresync** command resumes the updating the secondary volume based on the primary volume to reestablish pairing. If no data has been written in the secondary volume, differential P-VOL data is copied. If data has been written in the secondary volume, differential data from the P-VOL is copied to the S-VOL. The changes on the SVOL are overwritten. The **–swap** option updates the PVOL based on the SVOL so that the PVOL becomes the SVOL and the SVOL becomes the PVOL. Pair resynchronization can be specified even while the primary volume is being accessed. When the **pairresync** command is issued, any write access to the secondary volume is disabled.

The **pairresync** command puts a paired volume currently in the suspend state [PSUS or SSUS] into a PAIR state.

This command can be applied to each paired logical volume or each group.

Continuous Access

This command is rejected if any P-VOL or S-VOL is undergoing maintenance, such as copy resynchronization. If the P-VOL or S-VOL is in a blocked state, an error code is returned.

UNIX

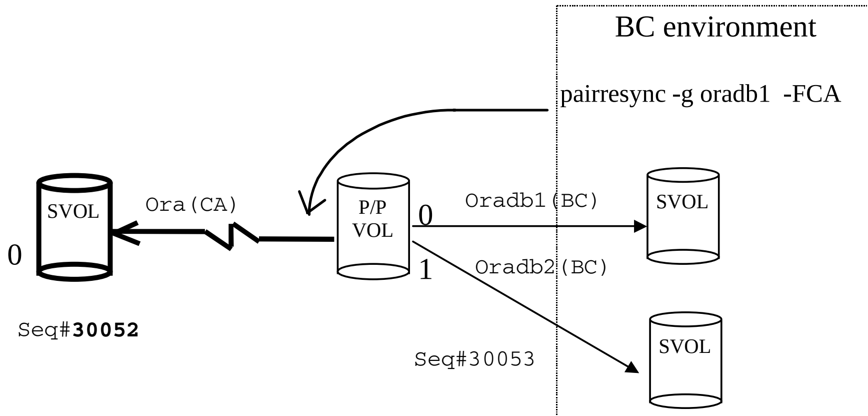
Caution *Because data in the secondary volume is renewed by **pairresync**, the secondary volume must be not be in a mounted state on any UNIX system.*

MPE/iX

Caution *Before issuing this command, ensure that the secondary volume is not mounted on any MPE/iX system. If it is, VSCLOSE that volume set and de-configure the LDEVs using IOCONFIG, the online device configuration utility program.*

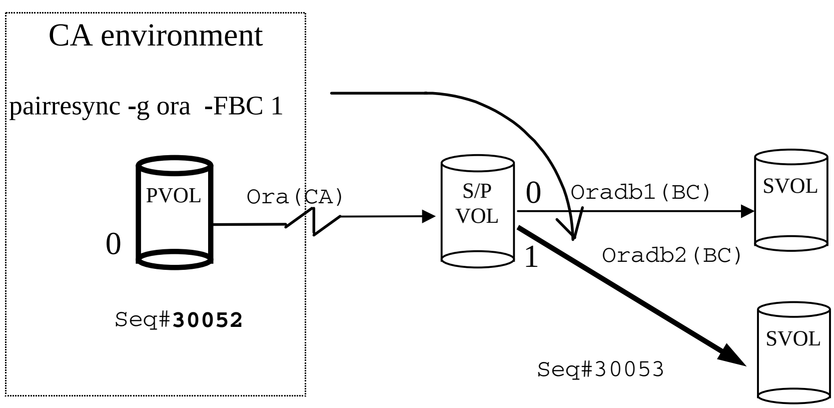
CA Operation

The following figure shows the usage of the **–FCA** option. In the example, the command resynchronizes a CA pair by specifying the name of a cascaded BC group.



BC Operation

The following figure shows the usage of the **–FBC** option. In the example, the command resynchronizes a BC pair (MU#1) by specifying the MU# and the CA group to which it is cascaded.



Returned Values

This command sets either of the following returned values in **exit()**, which allows you to check the execution results.

The command returns **0** upon normal termination.

A nonzero return indicates abnormal termination. For the error cause and details, see the execution logs.

Output Fields

`Group`	The group name (*dev_group*) described in the configuration definition file.
`PairVol(L/R)`	The paired volume name (*dev_name*) of the group described in the configuration definition file. `L` is the local host. `R` is the remote host.
`P,T#,L#`	(*CA only*) The port number, target ID, and LUN described in the configuration definition file.

`Port#`
`ID`
`LU-M`
	(*BC only*) The port number, target ID, LUN, and MU# described in the configuration definition file.

`Seq#`	The disk array serial number.
`LDEV#`	The LDEV number.
`P/S`	The (P-VOL, S-VOL) attribute of a volume.
`Status`	The status of the paired volume.
`Fence`	*(CA only)* The fence level of the paired volume.
`Copy%`	The copy operation rate (identical for P-VOL and S-VOL).
`P-LDEV#`	Displays the LDEV# of a primary pair partner.
`M=W`	*(Valid for PSUS state only)* In the P-VOL case, this designates “suspended” with S-VOL R/W enabled.

In the S-VOL case, this designates that the S-VOL can accept writes.

`M=N` — (*Valid for COPY/RCPY/PAIR/PSUE state*) A listed volume means that reading is disabled.

Example

This example shows a **pairresync** on group `VG01`. A pairdisplay shows two volumes in the COPY state. The `copy%` value indicates how much of the P-VOL is in sync with the S-VOL.

```
# pairresync -g VG01
# pairdisplay -g VG01 -fc -l
Group   PairVol(L/R)  (Port#,TID,LU-M),Seq#,LDEV#.P/S,Status,Copy%,P-LDEV# M
VG01    d1(L)         (CL2-P , 0,   0-0)35641  58..P-VOL COPY,   89      61  -
VG01    d2(L)         (CL2-P , 0,   1-0)35641  59..P-VOL COPY,   96      62  -
```

Error Codes

The table lists specific error codes for the **pairresync** command.

Category	Error Code	Error Message	Value
Volume status unrecoverable	EX_ENQVOL	Unmatched volume status within the group	236
	EX_INCSTG	Inconsistent status in group	229
	EX_INVVOL	Invalid volume status	222
	EX_INVSTP	Invalid pair status	228

pairsplit

Split a pair

Syntax

pairsplit –h

pairsplit { **| –c** *size* | **–nomsg** | **–g** *group* | **–d** *pair_vol* | **–d**[**g**] *raw_device* [*MU#*] **| –d**[**g**] *seq# LDEV#* [*MU#*] **| –E | –FBC | –FCA | –l | –r**[**w**] | **–P |** –**R | –S** }

Arguments

–c *size*

(*BC only*) Copies differential data retained in the primary volume into the secondary volume, then enables reading and writing from and to the secondary volume (after completion of the copying).

For size, specify a track size for copying in a range of 1 to 15. If no track size is specified, the value used for **paircreate** is used.

–d *pair_vol*

Specifies a paired volume name written in the configuration definition file. The command executes only for the specified paired volume.

–d[**g**] *raw_device* [*MU#*]

(HP-UX, Linux, Solaris, Windows NT/2000/2003, AIX, and MPE/iX only) Searches the RM configuration file (local instance) for a volume that matches the specified raw device. If a volume is found, the command is executed on the paired volume (**–d**) or group (**–dg**).

This option is effective without specification of the **–g** *group* option.

If the specified *raw_device* is listed in multiple device groups, this applies to the first one encountered.

–d[**g**] *seq# LDEV#* [*MU#*]

Searches the RM instance configuration file (local instance) for a volume that matches the specified sequence # and LDEV. If a volume is found, the command is executed on the paired logical volume (**–d**) or group (**–dg**).

This option is effective without specification of the **–g** *group* option.

If the specified LDEV is listed in multiple device groups, this applies to the first one encountered.

seq # LDEV # can be specified in hexadecimal (by the addition of 0*x*) or decimal format.

–E

(*BC only*) Issued to forcibly suspend a paired volume (for example, when a failure occurs). It is not normally used.

–FCA

Used to forcibly specify a cascading CA volume in a combination CA and BC environment. If the **–l** option is specified, this option splits a cascading CA volume on a local host (near site). If no **–l** option is specified, then this option splits a cascading CA volume on a remote host (far site).

The target CA volume must be a P-VOL, and the **–r** option cannot be specified.

–FBC [*MU#*]

Used to forcibly specify a cascading BC volume in a combination BC and CA environment. If the **–l** option is specified, this option splits a cascading BC volume on a local host (near site). If no **–l** option is specified, then this option splits a cascading BC volume on a remote host (far site).

The target BC volume must be a P-VOL, and the **–E** option cannot be specified.

–g *group*	Specifies which group to split. The group names are defined in the **HORCM_DEV** section of the RM instance configuration file. The command executes for the entire group unless the **–d** *pair_vol* argument is specified.
–h	Displays Help/Usage and version information.
–l	When the remote host is down and cannot be used, this option enables a **pairsplit** from a local host. Unless the **–R** option is specified, the target volume of a local host must be a P-VOL.
–nomsg	Suppresses messages. If used, this argument must be the first argument specified.
–P	(*CA only*) Used to bring the primary volume forcibly into write disabled mode. It is issued by the secondary host to suppress data updating by the host possessing the primary volume.
–R	(*CA only*) Used to bring the secondary volume forcibly into SMPL mode. It is issued by the secondary host if the host possessing the primary volume goes down because of a failure or the like.
–r[**w**]	(*CA only*) Used to specify a mode of access to the secondary volume after paired volumes are split. The **–r** option allows read-only access of the secondary volume, **–r** is a default option. The **–rw** option enables reading and writing from and to the secondary volume.
–S	(*Optional*) Used to bring the primary and secondary volumes into SMPL mode in which pairing is not maintained. Data consistency is only maintained if devices are in a suspend status (PSUS). If devices are in a pair status (PAIR), data on the secondary volume will not be consistent and not usable.

Description

The **pairsplit** command is used to change the status of a paired volume. This command puts the pair into either PSUS or SMPL state.

For status change from PAIR to PSUS or PSUS to SMPL: Before these state changes are made, all changes made to the P-VOL, up to the point when the command was issued, are written to the S-VOL. If possible the host system must flash any of the host resident buffer cache before executing this command.

For status change from PAIR to SMPL: Changes made on the P-VOL, that are not yet copied to S-VOL will be lost and data consistency on S-VOL will not be enforced. First, change the status from PAIR to PSUS and then to SMPL to ensure consistency on S-VOL in order to use data on S-VOL.

After a pair is put into the PSUS state, changes made to the P-VOL are no longer copied to the S-VOL. However, the changes made to both the S-VOL and the P-VOL are noted and, when the volumes are resynchronized, the changed tracks or cylinders (CA) are resynchronized with the P-VOL. See “pairresync” .

When a pair is put into SMPL state, the pair relationship between the volumes is broken. Changes made to either volume are not recorded. To get the volumes back into a pair relationship, the **paircreate** command must be used.

This command stops updating the secondary volume while maintaining pairing status. When this command is issued, read or read/write access to the secondary volume is enabled and the volume is put into a SSUS state.

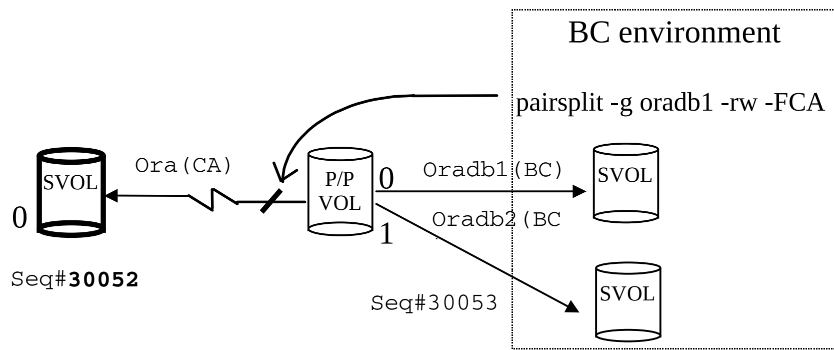
This command can be applied to each paired logical volume or each group. Only one pair splitting argument (**–r**, **–rw**, **–S**, **–R**, or **–P**) can be specified. If several arguments are specified, only the last argument is valid.

MPE/iX

Before you execute this command, the non-written data that remains in the buffer of the host must be given a flush for synchronization. For MPE/iX systems this is VSCOSE of the volume set.

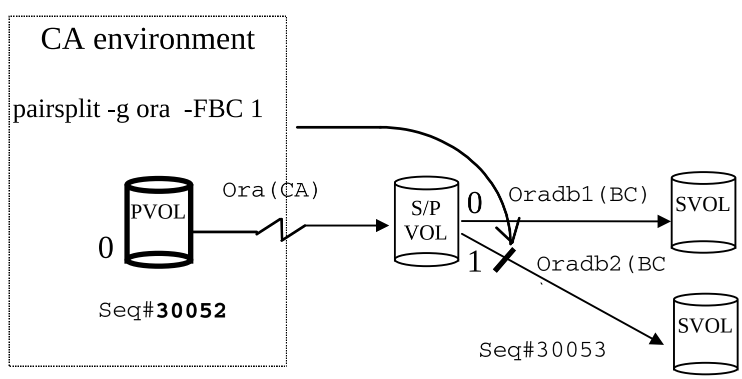
CA Operation

The following figure shows the usage of the **–FCA** option. In the example, the command splits (to PSUS) the CA pair by specifying the name of the BC group to which it is cascaded.



BC Operation

The following figure shows the usage of the **–FBC** option. In the example, the command splits (to PSUS) a BC pair (MU#1) by specifying the MU# and the name of the CA group to which it is cascaded.



Returned Values

This command sets either of the following returned values in **exit()**, which allows you to check the execution results.

The command returns **0** upon normal termination.

A nonzero return indicates abnormal termination. For the error cause and details, see the execution logs.

Error Codes

The table below lists specific error codes for the **pairsplit** command.

Category	Error Code	Error Message	Value
Volume status unrecoverable	EX_ENQVOL	Unmatched volume status within the group	236
	EX_INCSTG	Inconsistent status in group	229
	EX_INVVOL	Invalid volume status	222
	EX_EVOLCE	Pair volume combination error	235
	EX_INVSTP	Invalid pair status	228
	EX_EWSUSE	Pair suspended at WAIT state	234

pairsyncwait

Synchronization waiting command

Syntax

pairsyncwait -h

pairsyncwait { **-h** | **-q** | **-z** | **–g** *group* | **–d** *pair_vol* | **–d**[**g**] *raw_device* [*MU#*] | **–d[g]** *seq# LDEV#* [*MU#*] | **–m** *marker* | **–t** *timeout* **| –nowait** | **–nomsg** }

Arguments

–h Displays Help/Usage, and version information.

–q Terminates interactive mode and exits this command.

–z Makes this command enter interactive mode.

–zx *(Not for use with MPE/iX and OpenVMS)* Prevents you from using RM in interactive mode. This option terminates interactive mode upon RM shutdown.

–g *group* Used to specify a group name that is defined in the configuration definition file.

The command is executed for the specified group unless the **–d** *pair_vol* option is specified.

–d *pair_vol* Used to specify a logical (named) volume that is defined in the configuration definition file. When this option is specified, the command is executed for the specified paired logical volumes.

–d[g] *raw_device* [*MU*#]

(HP-UX, Linux, Solaris, Windows NT/2000/2003, AIX, and MPE/iX only) Searches the RM configuration file (local instance) for a volume that matches the specified raw device. If a volume is found, the command is executed on the paired volume (**–d**) or group (**–dg**).

This option is effective without specification of the **–g** *group* option.

If the specified *raw_device* is listed in multiple device groups, this will apply to the first one encountered.

–d[**g**] <*seq#*> <*LDEV#*> [*MU#*]

Searches the RM instance configuration file (local instance) for a volume that matches the specified sequence # and LDEV. If a volume is found, the command is executed on the paired logical volume (**–d**) or group (**–dg**).

This option is effective without specification of the **–g** *group* option.

If the specified LDEV is listed in multiple device groups, this will apply to the first one encountered.

seq # LDEV # can be specified in hexadecimal (by the addition of 0*x*) or decimal format.

–m *marker*

Used to specify the Q-marker, the async-CA sequence # of the main control unit (MCU) P-VOL. If RM gets the Q-marker from the **–nowait** option, then it can confirm the completion of asynchronous transfer to that point, by using **pairsysncwait** with that Q-marker.

If a Q-marker is not specified, RM uses the latest sequence # at the time **pairsysncwait** is executed. It is also possible to wait for completion from the S-VOL side.

Q-marker format:

```
iissssssss
```

The sequence # of P-VOL

The incarnation # of PAIR volume

–t *timeout*

Used to specify the *timeout* value to wait for the completion of the remote control unit (RCU) disk fast write (DFW) cache area. It is expressed in units of multiples of 100ms. The MCU gets the latest sequence # from the RCU at regular intervals.

–nowait

Used to get the latest sequence # of the MCU P-VOL and CTGID without waiting.

When this option is specified, the latest sequence # of MCU P-VOL is reported immediately, and the **–t** *timeout* options are ignored.

–nomsg

Suppresses messages to be displayed. It is used to execute a command from a user program.

If used, this argument must be specified at the beginning of a command argument.

Description

The **pairsyncwait** command is used to confirm that a mandatory write (and all writes before it) has been stored in the DFW (write) cache area of the RCU.

The command gets the latest P-VOL async-CA sequence # of the main control unit (MCU) side file and the sequence # of the most recently received write at the RCU DFW (with the correct CTGID, *group* or *raw_device*) and compares them at regular intervals.

If the RCU sequence # exceeds the value of the designated MCU sequence # within the time specified, this command reports a **0** return code (meaning P-VOL/S-VOL synchronization to the desired point is achieved).

The **–nowait** option shows the latest sequence # (Q-marker) of the designated MCU P-VOL and CTGID. The Q-marker is displayed in 10 hexadecimal characters.

Returned Values

This command returns one of the following values in **exit ()**, which allows you to check the execution results.

When the –nowait option is specified:

Normal termination

0. The status is **NOWAIT**

Abnormal termination

Other than 0 to 127. (For the error cause and details, see the execution logs.)

When the –nowait option is not specified:

Normal termination:

0: The status is DONE (Completion of synchronization)

1: The status is TIMEOUT (Timeout expired before the desired Q-marker reached the remote array.)

2: The status is BROKEN (Q-Marker process is refused and terminated)

3: The status is CHANGED (Q-Marker is invalid (old) due to a prior (successfully reported) resynchronization)

Abnormal termination:

Other than 0 to 127 (For the error cause and details, refer to the execution logs)

Tip Specified *group* volume must be P-VOL with status PAIR. Other cases return an error (EX_INVVOL). It is possible to issue **pairsysncwait** from the S-VOL side, but **–m** *marker* is required.

Output Fields

`UnitID`	The Unit ID in the case of multiple DKC connections.
`CTGID`	The CT group ID async-CA when the LDEV has been specified as an async-CA P-VOL or S-VOL.
`Q-Marker`	The sequence # of MCU P-VOL at the time the command is received.
`Status`	The status after execution of the command.
`Q-Num`	Number of processes in the queue waiting for synchronization within the CTGID of the unit.

Examples

When the **–nowait** option is specified:

```
# pairsyncwait –g oradb  –nowait
UnitID  CTGID     Q-Marker  Status    Q-Num
0           3   01003408ef  NOWAIT        2
```

When the **–nowait** option is not specified:

```
# pairsyncwait –g oradb  –t 100
UnitID  CTGID     Q-Marker  Status    Q-Num
0           3   01003408ef  DONE           2

# pairsyncwait –g oradb  –t 1
UnitID  CTGID     Q-Marker  Status    Q-Num
0           3   01003408ef  TIMEOUT        3

# pairsyncwait –g oradb  –t 100 –m 01003408ef
UnitID  CTGID     Q-Marker  Status    Q-Num
0           3   01003408ef  DONE           0

# pairsyncwait –g oradb  –t 100
UnitID  CTGID     Q-Marker  Status    Q-Num
0           3   01003408ef  BROKEN        0

# pairsyncwait –g oradb  –t 100     –m 01003408ef
UnitID  CTGID     Q-Marker  Status    Q-Num
0           3   01003408ef  CHANGED        0
```

Error Codes

The table below lists specific error codes for the **pairsyncwait** command.

Category	Error Code	Error Message	Value
Volume status unrecoverable	EX_INVVOL	Invalid volume status	222

pairvolchk

Check volume attribute

Syntax

pairvolchk –h

pairvolchk { **–h** | **q | z | –g** *group* | **–d** *pair_vol* | **–d**[**g**] *raw_device* [*MU#*] | **–FCA** | **–FBC** [*MU#*] | **–d**[**g**] *seq# LDEV#* [*MU#*] | **–c** | **–s**[**s**] | **–nomsg** }

Arguments

–c

Checks the conformability of the paired volumes of the local and remote hosts and reports the volume attribute of the remote host.

If it is not specified, the volume attribute of the local host is not reported.

–d *pair_vol*

Specifies a paired volume name written in the configuration definition file. The command executes only for the specified paired volume.

–d[**g**] *raw_device* [*MU#*]

(HP-UX, Linux, Solaris, Windows NT/2000/2003, AIX and MPE/iX only) Searches the RM configuration file (local instance) for a volume that matches the specified raw device. If a volume is found, the command is executed on the paired volume (**–d**) or group (**–dg**).

This option is effective without specification of the **–g** *group* option.

If the specified *raw_device* is listed in multiple device groups, this applies to the first group encountered.

–**d[g]** *seq# LDEV#* [*MU#*]

This option searches the RM instance configuration file (local instance) for a volume that matches the specified sequence number (*seq#*) and LDEV. If a volume is found, the command is executed on the paired logical volume (**–d**) or group (**–dg**).

	This option is effective without specification of the **–g** *group* option. If the specified LDEV is listed in multiple device groups, this applies to the first group encountered. *seq # LDEV #* can be specified in hexadecimal (by the addition of 0*x*) or decimal.
–FBC [*MU#*]	Forcibly specifies a BC pair using the name of a CA group to which it is cascaded. If the **–c** option is not specified, this option acquires the attributes of a cascading BC volume on a local host (near site). If the **–c** option is specified, this option acquires the attributes of a cascading BC volume at the remote host (far site).
–FCA	Forcibly specifies a CA volume by way of its cascaded BC volume name. If the **–c** option is not specified, this option acquires the attributes of a cascading CA volume at the local host (near site). If the **–c** option is specified, this option acquires the attributes of a cascading CA volume at the remote host (far site).
–g *group*	Specifies a group name in the RM instance configuration file. The command executes for the entire group unless the **–d** *pair_vol* argument is specified.
–h	Displays Help/Usage and version information.
–nomsg	Suppresses messages to be displayed when this command is executed. It is used to execute a command from a user program. If used, this argument, must be specified at the beginning of a command argument.
-q	Terminates interactive mode and exits this command.
–s[**s**]	See the status table on page 181. Used to acquire the fine granularity volume state (for example, PVOL_PSUS) of a volume.

If it is not specified, the generic volume state (for example, P-VOL) is reported.

-z Makes this command enter interactive mode. Interactive mode is terminated upon RAID Manager shut-down.

-zx *(Not for use with MPE/iX or OpenVMS)* Prevents using RM in interactive mode.

Description

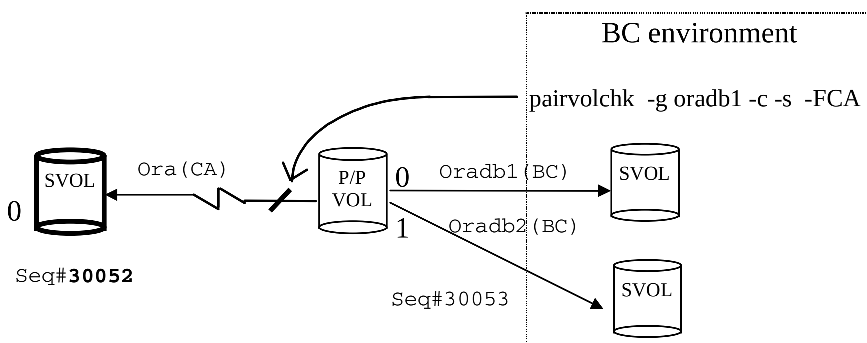
The **pairvolchk** command reports the attributes of a volume from the perspective of the local or remote host. This command can be applied to each paired logical volume or each group.

This is the most important command used by high availability (HA) failover software to determine when a failover or failback is appropriate.

The table under the heading "HA control script state transitions" on page 304 lists state transitions resulting from the execution of **pairvolchk** in HA control scripts.

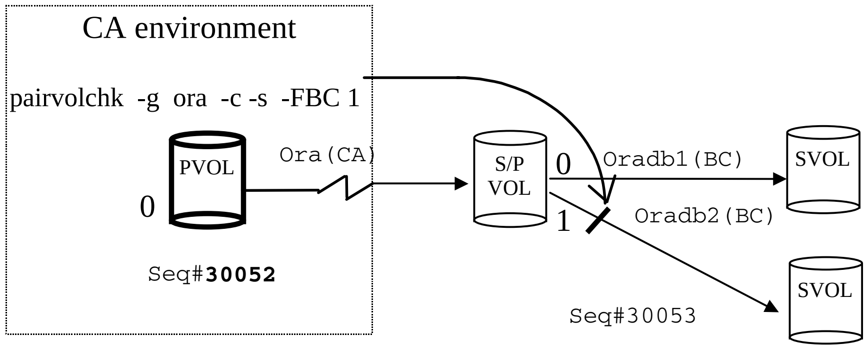
CA Operation

The following figure shows the usage of the **–FCA** option. In the example, the command acquires the fine granularity CA status by specifying the name of a BC group to which it is cascaded.



BC Operation

The following figure shows the usage of the **–FBC** option. In the example, the command acquires the fine granularity status (PVOL_PSUS) of the BC S-VOL/P-VOL (MU#1) by specifying the name of the CA group to which it is cascaded.



Returned Values

When the –s[s] argument is not specified:

Normal termination:

1: The volume attribute is SMPL

2: The volume attribute is P-VOL

3: The volume attribute is S-VOL

Abnormal termination:

Other than 0 to 127. (For the error cause and details, see the execution logs.)

236: EX_ENQVOL

237: EX_CMDIOE

235: EX_EVOLCE (Only when the **–c** option is specified)

242: EX_ENORMT (Only when the **–c** option is specified)

216: EX_EXTCTG

214: EX_ENQCTG

The table below shows the error messages associated with the above error codes.

Error Code	Error Message	Return Value
EX_ENORMT	No remote host alive to accept commands or Remote RAID Manager might be blocked (sleeping) while performing I/O.	242
EX_CMDIOE	Control command I/O error	237
	Control command I/O error, or rejected	
EX_ENQVOL	Unmatched volume status within the group	236
EX_EVOLCE	Pair Volume combination error	235
EX_INCSTG	Inconsistent status in group	229
EX_VOLCUR	S-VOL currency error	225
EX_VOLCUE	Local Volume currency error	224
EX_VOLCRE	Local and Remote Volume currency error	223
EX_EXTCTG	Extended CT group between RAIDs	216
EX_ENQCTG	Unmatched CTGID within the group	214

When the –s[s] argument is specified:

Normal termination:

11: The status is SMPL

22: The status is PVOL_COPY or PVOL_RCPY

23: The status is PVOL_PAIR

24: The status is PVOL_PSUS

25: The status is PVOL_PSUE

26: The status is PVOL_PDUB (CA and LUSE volume only)

29: The status is PVOL_INCSTG (Inconsistent status in group) Not returned

32: The status is SVOL_COPY or SVOL_RCPY

33: The status is SVOL_PAIR

34: The status is SVOL_PSUS

35: The status is SVOL_PSUE

36: The status is SVOL_PDUB (CA and LUSE volume only)

39: The status is SVOL_INCSTG (Inconsistent status in group)
Not returned

PFUL and PFUS states:

42: The status is PVOL_COPY

43: The status is PVOL_PAIR

44: The status is PVOL_PSUS

45: The status is PVOL_PSUE

46: The status is PVOL_PDUB (CA and LUSE volumes only)

47: The status is PVOL_PFUL

48: The status is PVOL_PFUS

52: The status is SVOL_COPY or SVOL_RCPY

53: The status is SVOL_PAIR

54: The status is SVOL_PSUS

55: The status is SVOL_PSUE

56: The status is SVOL_PDUB (CA and LUSE volumes only)

57: The status is SVOL_PFUL

58: The status is SVOL_PFUS

Other than 0 to 127 (For the error cause and details, see the execution logs):

236:EX_ENQVOL

237:EX_CMDIOE

235:EX_EVOLCE . . . When the **–c** argument is specified

242:EX_ENORMT. . . When the **–c** argument is specified

16:EX_EXTCTG

214:EX_ENQCTG

When a volume group contains volumes in different states, one state will take precedence and will be reported for the group as shown in the following table.

Option	COPY	PSUE	PDUB	PFUS	PSUS	PFUL	PAIR	Group Status
–s	1	x	x	x	x	x	x	COPY*
	0	1	x	x	x	x	x	PSUE
	0	0	1	x	x	x	x	PDUB
	0	0	0	1	x	x	x	PFUS
	0	0	0	0	1	x	x	PSUS
	0	0	0	0	0	1	x	PFUL
	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	PAIR
–ss	1	x	x	x	x	x	x	COPY*
	0	1	x	x	x	x	x	PSUE
	0	0	1	x	x	x	x	PDUB
	0	0	0	x	x	1	x	PFUL
	0	0	0	x	x	0	1	PAIR
	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	PFUS
	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	PSUS

Explanation of Terms

1	Status is TRUE.
0	Status is FALSE.
x	Status is TRUE or FALSE (don't care).
COPY*	Status is either COPY or RCPY.
PFUL	Since the PFUL state refers to the High Water Mark of the Side File in PAIR state, the PFUL state is displayed

as PAIR by all commands except **pairvolchk** and the **–fc** option of the **pairdisplay** command.

PFUS — Since the PFUS state is referring to a Suspend state with the Side File Full, the PFUS state is displayed as PSUS by all commands except **pairvolchk** and the **–fc** option of the **pairdisplay** command.

SVOL_PSUS — Displayed as SSUS by the **pairdisplay** command.

Error Codes

The table lists specific error codes for the **pairvolchk** command.

Category	Error Code	Error Message	Value
Volume status unrecoverable	EX_ENQVOL	Unmatched volume status within the group	236
	EX_EVOLCE	Pair volume combination error	235

Examples

CA Async:

```
# pairvolchk -g oradb
pairvolchk:Volstat is P-VOL.[status=PAIR fence=ASYNC CTGID=2 MINAP=2
```

CA Sync:

```
# pairvolchk -g oradb
pairvolchk : Volstat is P-VOL.[status = PAIR fence = DATA  MINAP = 2 ]
```

“MINAP” shows the minimum active paths on specified group on the P-VOL. If the array firmware does not support tracking the number of active paths, then "MINAP" will not be displayed as below.

BC:

```
# pairvolchk -g oradb
pairvolchk : Volstat is P-VOL.[status = PAIR ]
```

BC with CT Group:

```
# pairvolchk -g oradb
pairvolchk : Volstat is P-VOL.[status = PAIR CTGID = 1 ]
```

raidar

Report LDEV activity

Syntax

raidar –h

raidar { **-h** | **–p** *port targ lun* [*mun*] | **–pd** *raw_device* | **-q** | **–s** [**interval**] [**count**] | **–z** | **–zx** }

Arguments

–h	Displays Help/Usage and version information.
–p	Specifies a device location of the disk array for a disk array activity. This argument can be used more than once to monitor more than one device. It is only possible to monitor 16 devices at once.
port	Specifies the name of a port to be reported by selecting it from CL1-A to CL1-R (excluding CL1-I and CL1-O), or CL2-A to CL2-R (excluding CL2-I and CL2-O). For the XP1024, the expanded ports CL3-A up to CL3-R, or CL4-A up to CL4-R can also be selected. For the XP12000, the expanded ports CL3-A up to CL3-R, or CLG-A up to CLG-R can be selected. Port specification is not case sensitive (CL1-A= cl1-a= CL1-a= cl1-A).
lun	Specifies a LUN of a specified SCSI/Fibre Channel target.
targ	Specifies a SCSI/Fibre Channel target ID of a specified port.
mun	(*BC only*) Specifies the duplicated mirroring descriptor (MU#) for the identical LU under BC in a range of 0 to 2.
–pd *raw_device*	*(HP-UX, Linux, Solaris, Windows NT/2000/2003, AIX, and MPE/iX only)* Allows the designation of an LDEV via the specified *raw_device* file.

–q Terminates interactive mode and exits this command.

–s [**interval**] [**count**] or **–sm** [**interval**] [**count**]
Designates the monitoring time interval.

–s option interprets the time interval in seconds.

–sm option interprets the time interval in minutes.

interval Specify from 1 to 60. The default value is 3.

count Specifies a number of repetitions. When omitted, the command repeats until cancelled via CNTL-C.

–z Makes the command enter interactive mode. The interactive mode can be used to enter the **–p** options. This command begins an activity based on the **–s** options. This command returns to non-interactive mode upon receiving CNTL-C. Interactive mode is terminated through the **–q** option or RM shut-down.

–zx *(Not for use with MPE/iX or OpenVMS)* Prevents using RM in interactive mode.

Description

The **raidar** command reports the I/O activity of a port, target or LUN over a specified time interval. It will report any early termination via CNTL-C. This command can be used regardless of the RM instance configuration definitions.

I/O activity of an S-VOL that is part of an active CA pair (a pair that is in the COPY or PAIR state) shows internal I/O used to maintain the pair as well as user I/O. For BC, only host I/Os are reported on the P-VOL.

For CA, the I/O activity reported for an S-VOL in either COPY or PAIR state reflects the total, not just host based, activity of the volume.

For BC, only the host based I/O activity is reported.

If the volume state changes from S-VOL (COPY or PAIR) to SMPL during the monitoring period, the activity number may be based on some internal and some host I/Os.

Output Fields

`IOPS`	Displays the IO (reads/writes) per second.
`HIT(%)`	Displays the cache hit rate for reads.
`W(%)`	Displays ratio for writes.
`IOCNT`	Displays the number of reads/writes.

Example

sampling interval

Signifies no I/O activity

```
#  raidar  -p cl1-a  15 6  -p cl1-b  14 5  -p cl1-a  12 3  -s 3
TIME[03]    PORT     T     L    VOL     STATUS   IOPS     HIT(%)  W(%)   IOCNT
13:45:25    -        -     -    -       -        -        -       -      -
13:45:28    CL1-A    15    6    SMPL    ---      200.0    80.0    40.0   600
            CL1-B    14    5    P-VOL   PAIR     133.3    35.0    13.4   400
            CL1-A    12    3    P-VOL   PSUS     200.0    35.0    40.6   600
```

Related Information

Appendix C, "Fibre Channel addressing" .

raidqry

Confirm disk array connection to host

Syntax

raidqry –h

raidqry { **–l | –q** | **–r** *group* **| –f** | **–z** | **–zx** }

Arguments

–f	This option is used to display the floatable IP address for the hostname (ip_address) described in a configuration definition file.
–h	Displays Help/Usage and version information.
–l	Displays a configuration of the local host connected to the disk array.
–q	Terminates interactive mode and exits this command.
–r *group*	Displays the configuration of the remote host and the disk array connected with the designated group.
–z	Makes this command enter interactive mode.
–zx	*(Not for use with MPE/iX or OpenVMS)* Prevents using RM in interactive mode.

Description

The **raidqry** command displays the configuration of the connected host and disk array.

Output Fields

`No`	Specifies the group names (by number) in the order in which they are defined in the configuration file.
`Group`	When using the **–r** option, this item shows the group name (*dev_group*) described in the configuration definition file.

`Floatable Host`	When using the **–f** option, this item displays the first 30 characters of the host name (*ip_address*) described in the configuration definition file. The **–f** option interprets the host name as utilizing a floatable IP for the host.
`HORCM_ver`	When the **–l** option is specified, this shows the version of the CA of the local host. When the **–r** option is specified, this item shows the version of the CA on the remote host for the specified group.
`Uid`	Shows unit ID of the disk array connected to the local host when the **–l** option is specified. If the **–r** option is specified, the information is for the disk array connected to the remote host.
`Serial#`	Shows the production serial number of the disk array connected to the local host when the **–l** option is specified. If the **–r** option is specified, the information is for the disk array connected to the remote host.
`Micro_ver`	Shows microcode version of the disk array connected to the local host when the **–l** option is specified. If the **–r** option is specified, the information is for the disk array connected to the remote host.
`Cache(MB)`	Shows logical cache capacity (in MB) in the disk array. When the **–l** option is specified, the cache capacity is for the local disk array. When the **–r** option is specified, the cache capacity shown is for the remote disk array.

Display Example

```
# raidqry -l
No Group    Hostname     HORCM_ver  Uid  Serial#  Micro_ver     Cache(MB)
 1   ---     HOSTA      01-00-03/03  0     30053  52-35-02/02     256
 1   ---     HOSTA      01-00-03/03  1     30054  52-35-02/02     256

# raidqry  -r oradb
No Group    Hostname     HORCM_ver  Uid  Serial#  Micro_ver    Cache(MB)
 1   oradb   HOSTA       01-00-03/03 0     30053  52-35-02/02   256
 2   oradb   HOSTB       01-00-03/03 0     30053  52-35-02/02   256
 1   oradb   HOSTA       01-00-03/03 1     30054  52-35-02/02   256
 2   oradb   HOSTB       01-00-03/03 1     30054  52-35-02/02   256


# raidqry  -l  -f
No Group Floatable Host  HORCM_ver  Uid  Serial#  Micro_ver  Cache(MB)
1   ---  FH001          01-00-03/03  0  30053    52-35-02/02  256
```

raidscan

Display port status

Syntax

raidscan –h

raidscan {**–CLI** | **–p** *port*[*hgrp*] | **–s** *Seq#* | **–t** *targ* | **–l** *lun* | **–pd** *raw_device* | **–f**[**xfgde**] | **–find** | **–find conf** [*MU#*] [**–g** *name*] **| –find inst** **| –find** [*op*] [*MU#*] **| –find sync** [*MU#*] [**–g** *name*] **| –find verify** | **–pi** *strings* | **–q** | **–z** | **–zx** }

Arguments

–CLI	Specifies structured output for Command Line Interface parsing. The column data is aligned in each row. The delimiters between columns are either a space or –.
–f[f]	Specifies the volume type in the output (for example, OPEN-3/8/9/K). If this option is specified, the **–f[g]** and **–f[d]** options are invalid.
–f[x]	**x** displays the LDEV number in hexadecimal.
–f[g]	Displays the group name in the output. This option is used to search a group in the configuration definition file (local instance) and display a *group_name* when the scanned LDEV is contained in the group. If this option is specified, the **–f[f]** and **–f[d]** options are invalid.
–f[d]	Displays the Device_File that was registered to the RM Group in the output, based on the LDEV (as defined in the local instance configuration definition file). If this option is specified, the **–f[f]** and **–f[g]** options are invalid.

–f[e]

Displays the serial number and LDEV number of the external LUNs mapped to the LDEV.

If the external LUN mapped to the LDEV on a specified port does not exist, then this option will do nothing. If this option is specified , -f[f][g][d] options ae not allowed.

Example

```
# raidscan -p cl1-a-0 -fe -CLI

PORT# /ALPA/C TID#  LU# Seq#   Num  LDEV# P/S  Status Fence  E-Seq# E-LDEV#
CL1-A-0  ef  0   0   48 62468     2   256 SMPL     -      -  30053     17
CL1-A-0  ef  0   0   49 62468     2   272 SMPL     -      -  30053     23
CL1-A-0  ef  0   0   50 62468     1   288 SMPL     -      -  30053     28
                      28
```

E-Seq#. Displays the production (serial) number of the external LUN.

E-LDEV#. Displays the LDEV# of the external LUN.

–find

(HP-UX, Linux, Solaris, Windows NT/2000/2003, and MPE/iX only) Used to display the Port, targetID, LUN (in RAID Manager notation) that was mapped to a LDEV using a special (raw device) file provided via STDIN.

If the target and LUN are unknown, this option can be used to discover the Port, targetID, LUN associated with a host device file so that the information can be included in a **horcm.conf** file.

This option can be used with the **–fx** option to display the LDEV numbers in hexadecimal format.

–find conf [*MU#*] [**–g** *name*]

Used to display the port, target ID, and LUN in the **horcm.conf** file by using a special raw device file provided via STDIN.

If the target ID and LUN are unknown for the target device file, then you will have to start RM without a description for HORCM_DEV and HORCM_INST.

This option allows you to use the **–fx** option to display the LDEV numbers in hexadecimal format.

The **–g** *name* option is used to specify the name to be used for dev_group in the **horcm.conf** file. If this option is not specified, the group applies **VG** as the default.

–find inst This option runs automatically at **/etc/horcm_startup** time. It is used to logically connect and register a device file name to all pertinent mirror descriptors [MU#s] in the LDEV map table. It allows RM to note permitted volumes.

Normally, the user does not need to run this command. RM gets the serial# and LDEV# from the disk array. Then, RM compares the inquiry result to the contents of the **Horcm.conf** file, and the result is displayed and stored within the RM instance. To minimize the time required, this option is terminated when the registration is finished based on the **horcm.conf** file.

This option can be used with the **–fx** option to display the LDEV numbers in hexadecimal format.

–find [*op*] [*MU#*] Used to execute the specified [op] using a raw device file provided by STDIN.

If the **–pi** *strings* option is also specified, then this option does not get its “strings” via STDIN. The *strings* specified in the **–pi** option will, instead, be used as input.

–find sync [*MU#*] [**–g** *name*]

Flushes the system buffer of the logical drive corresponding to a **–g** *name* (dev_group) in the RM configuration file. The dev_group name is provided via STDIN through the KEY WORD($Volume,$LETALL, $Physical).

The **–g** *name* option is used to specify the name to be used for dev_group in the **horcm.conf** file. If this option is not specified, then the system buffers associated with all groups for the local instance are flushed.

If the logical drive corresponding to a **–g** *name* is not open for any application, then the logical drive system buffer is flushed and the drive is unmounted.

If the logical drive corresponding to a **–g** *name is* open for an application, then the logical drive system buffer is only flushed.

This option allows the system buffer to be flushed before a pairsplit without unmounting the PVOL (open state).

–find verify [*MU#*]

Used to verify the relationship between a Group in the configuration definition file and a Device_File registered to the LDEV map tables (based on the raw device file name provided via STDIN).

This option also allows you to use the **–fx** option to display the LDEV numbers in hexadecimal format. You can also use this in conjunction with the **–fd** option.

This option will be affected by the command execution environment (HORCC_MRCF).

If a device name is different in the DEVICE_FILE and Device_File fields, then an LDEV is being referenced by multiple device files. See the Examples section for an example of such a case.

–h Displays Help/Usage and version information.

–l *lun* Specifies a LUN for a specified SCSI/Fibre Channel target. Specifying a LUN without designating the target ID is not allowed.

If this option is not specified, the command applies to all LUNs.

If this option is specified, the **–t** option must also be used.

–p *port*[*hgrp*]
Specifies the name of a port to be scanned by selecting it from CL1-A to CL1-R (excluding CL1-I and CL1-O), or CL2-A to CL2-R (excluding CL2-I and CL2-O).

For the XP1024, the expanded ports CL3-A up to CL3-R, or CL4-A up to CL4-R can also be selected.

For the XP12000, the expanded ports CL3-A up to CL3-R, or CLG-A up to CLG-R can also be selected.

Port specifications are not case sensitive (CL1-A= cl1-a= CL1-a= cl1-A).

This option must always be specified.

The [*hgrp*] option displays only the LDEVs mapped to a host group on a XP1024/XP12000 port.

–pd *raw_device*
(UNIX only) Specifies a *raw_device* name.

(Windows NT/2000/2003 only) Specifies a physical device in this format:

\\.\PhysicalDrive*n*

(HP-UX, Linux, Solaris, Windows NT/2000/2003, and MPE/iX only) Finds the *Seq#* and port name on the disk array and scans the port of the disk array (which corresponds with the unit ID) and searches for the unit ID from *Seq#*.

If this option is specified, and then the **–s** *Seq#* option is invalid.

–pi *strings*
Used to explicitly specify a character string rather than receiving it from STDIN.

If this option is specified, then the **–find** option will be ignored; the *strings* specified in the **–pi** option will, instead, be used as input. The specified character *string* must be limited to 255 characters.

–q Terminates interactive mode and exits this command.

–s *seq#* Used to specify the serial number of the disk array on multiple disk array connections when you cannot specify the unit ID which is contained in the **–p** *port* option.

This option searches corresponding unit ID from *Seq#* and it scans the port which is specified by **–p** *port* option.

If this option is specified, the unit ID which is contained in **–p** *port* is ignored.

Example

If the unit ID#2 has been corresponding to seq#30053 in a multiple RM configuration, then you can specify the array in the following two ways:

–raidscan –p CL1-E2

(Unit ID which is contained in **–p** *port* is #2.)

–raidscan –p CL1-E –s 30053

–t *targ* Specifies a SCSI/Fibre target ID. If this option is not specified, the command applies to all targets.

–z Makes this command enter interactive mode.

–zx *(Not for use with MPE/iX or OpenVMS)* Prevents using RM in interactive mode.

Description

The **raidscan** command displays, for a given SCSI/Fibre port, the target ID, LDEV (mapped for LUN, and the status of the LDEV), regardless of the configuration definition file.

Output Fields

`Port#`	The port name on the disk array.
`ALPA/C`	Arbitrated loop physical address of the port on the disk array.
`TargetID#(TID#)`	The SCSI/Fibre Channel target ID of specified port.
`LUN#(LU#)`	The logical unit number of specified target ID in the disk array.
`Num(LDEV#...)`	The number of LDEV and LDEV# that used LUSE volume on the disk array.
`P/S`	The (P-VOL, S-VOL) attribute of a volume.
`Status`	The status of the paired volume in the disk array.
`P-Seq#`	Seq# (production serial number) of the pair partner array.
`P-LDEV#`	LDEV# of the partner that becomes a pair in or among the disk array.
`Vol.Type`	Type name of volume mapped to LUN.
`Group`	The group name (*dev_group*) described in the configuration definition file.
`PairVol`	The paired volume name (dev_name) within the group defined in the configuration definition file.
`M`	The MU# defined in the configuration definition file. For CA, the MU# is shown as **–**. For BC, the MU# is shown as **0**, **1**, or **2**.
`Device_File`	The Device_File that is registered to the LDEV map tables within RM.
`UID`	The unit ID for multiple array configurations. If UID is displayed as **–**, a command device (HORCM-CMD) has not been found.

S/F	Shows whether a port is SCSI or Fibre Channel.
PORT	The port number.
TARG	The target ID (converted by the fibre conversion table).
LUN	The logical unit number (converted by the fibre conversion table).
SERIAL	The production (serial) number of the disk array.
LDEV	The LDEV number.
PRODUCT_ID	The product ID field from the STD inquiry page.

Examples

A **raidscan** using the **–CLI** option formats the display so that all the columns are aligned.

1. # raidscan –p CL1-C –CLI

```
Port# TargetID# Lun# Seq# Num LDEV# P/S Status  Fence  P-Seq# P-LDEV#
CL1-C  1   0  30053  1  274      SMPL  -    -     -     -
CL1-C  2   2  30053  1  260     P-VOL  PAIR   NEVER  30053   268
CL1-C  2   3  30053  1  261     P-VOL  PAIR   NEVER  30053   269
```

A **raidscan** on a Fibre Channel port displays ALPA data for the port instead of target ID number.

```
#  raidscan  -p  CL2-P
PORT# /ALPA/C,TID#,LU#.Num(LDEV#..)..P/S, Status,LDEV#,P-Seq#,P-LDEV#
CL2-P /  ef/0, 0,  0-1.0(58).........P-VOL PSUS   58,  35641    61
CL2-P /  ef/0, 0,  1-1.0yp(59).......P-VOL PSUS   59,  35641    62
CL2-P /  ef/0, 0,  2...0(61).........S-VOL SSUS   61,  -----    58
CL2-P /  ef/0, 0,  3...0(62).........S-VOL SSUS   62,  -----    59
```

The following example uses the –find option.

```
# ls /dev/* | raidscan -find
DEVICE_FILE      UID  S/F PORT   TARG  LUN    SERIAL  LDEV  PRODUCT_ID
/dev/ldev101       0   S  CL1-M     0    2     31168   118  OPEN-3-CVS
/dev/ldev102       0   S  CL1-M     0    3     31168   121  OPEN-3-CVS
/dev/ldev105       -   -  CL1-M     -    -     31170   121  OPEN-3-CVS
```

The following example uses the **-find conf** option.

```
# cat /etc/horcmperm.conf | raidscan -find conf 0 -g ORA
HORCM_DEV
#dev_group          dev_name        port#     TargetID     LU#     MU#
# /dev/rdsk/c23t0d0    SER =    61456  LDEV = 192[FIBRE FCTBL = 4 ]
ORA                 ORA_000         CL2-J             0       0       0
# /dev/rdsk/c23t0d1    SER =    61456  LDEV =  193 [ FIBRE FCTBL = 4 ]
ORA                 ORA_001         CL2-J             0       1       0
# /dev/rdsk/c23t0d2    SER =    61456  LDEV =  194 [ FIBRE FCTBL = 4 ]
ORA                 ORA_002         CL2-J             0       2       0
# /dev/rdsk/c23t0d3    SER =    61456  LDEV =  195 [ FIBRE FCTBL = 4 ]
ORA                 ORA_003         CL2-J             0       3       0
# ERROR [CMDDEV] /dev/rdsk/c23t0d7   SER =   61456  LDEV =  259 [ OPEN-3-CM ]
```

The target device is suppressed if:

- It is the command device:

```
# ERROR [CMDDEV] /dev/rdsk/c23t0d7    SER =   61456  LDEV =  259 [ OPEN-3-CM        ]
```

- It shares an LDEV among multiple device files and an LDEV is already displayed by another target device:

```
# ERROR [LDEV LINK] /dev/rdsk/c24t0d3  SER =    61456  LDEV =  195 [FIBRE FCTBL = 4]
```

- It does not have a valid MU#:

```
# ERROR [INVALID MUN (2 < 1)] /dev/rdsk/c24t0d3  SER =  61456 LDEV = 195 [ OPEN-3  ]
```

- It mixes different RAID types:

```
# ERROR [MIXING RAID TYPE] /dev/rdsk/c24t0d3   SER =  61456  LDEV = 195 [ OPEN-3   ]
```

The following example flushes the system buffer associated with the ORB group through $Volume. This example uses the echo $Volume | **raidscan -find sync -g** ORB or **raidscan -pi** $Volume **-find sync -g** ORB options.

```
[SYNC] : ORB ORB_000[-] -> \Dmt1\Dsk1 : Volume{bf48a395-0ef6-11d5-8d69-00c00d003b1e}
[SYNC] : ORB ORB_001[-] -> \Dmt1\Dsk2 : Volume{bf48a395-0ef6-11d5-8d69-00c00d003b1e}
[SYNC] : ORB ORB_002[-] -> \Dmt1\Dsk3 : Volume{bf48a395-0ef6-11d5-8d69-00c00d003b1e}
```

The following example flushes the system buffer associated with all of groups for the local instance. This example uses the echo $Volume | **raidscan -find sync** or **raidscan -pi** $Volume **-find sync** options.

```
[SYNC] : ORA ORA_000[-] -> \Vol44\Dsk0 : Volume{56e4954a-28d5-4824-a408-3ff9a6521e5d}
[SYNC] : ORA ORA_000[-] -> \Vol45\Dsk0 : Volume{56e4954a-28d5-4824-a408-3ff9a6521e5e}
[SYNC] : ORB ORB_000[-] -> \Dmt1\Dsk1  : Volume{bf48a395-0ef6-11d5-8d69-00c00d003b1e}
[SYNC] : ORB ORB_001[-] -> \Dmt1\Dsk2  : Volume{bf48a395-0ef6-11d5-8d69-00c00d003b1e}
[SYNC] : ORB ORB_002[-] -> \Dmt1\Dsk3  : Volume{bf48a395-0ef6-11d5-8d69-00c00d003b1e
```

The following example uses the **–find inst** option.

```
# ioscan  -fun | grep rdsk | raidscan -find inst
DEVICE_FILE             Group     PairVol      PORT    TARG   LUN M    SERIAL  LDEV
/dev/rdsk/c0t3d0        oradb     oradev1      CL1-D      3     0 -     35013    17
/dev/rdsk/c0t3d0        oradb     oradev1      CL1-D      3     0 0     35013    17
/dev/rdsk/c0t3d0        oradb1    oradev2      CL1-D      3     0 1     35013    17
```

The following example uses the **–find verify** option.

```
# ioscan  -fun | grep rdsk | raidscan -find verify
DEVICE_FILE             Group     PairVol      PORT    TARG   LUN M    SERIAL  LDEV
/dev/rdsk/c0t3d0        oradb     oradev1      CL1-D      3     0 0     35013    17
/dev/rdsk/c0t3d1        oradb     oradev2      CL1-D      3     1 0     35013    18
/dev/rdsk/c0t3d2        -         -            -          -     - 0     35013    19
```

The following example uses the **–find verify** and **–fd** options.

```
# ioscan  -fun | grep rdsk | raidscan -find verify 1 -fd
DEVICE_FILE             Group     PairVol      Device_File      M    SERIAL  LDEV
/dev/rdsk/c0t3d0        oradb     oradev1      c0t3d0           1     35013    17
/dev/rdsk/c0t3d1        oradb     oradev2      Unknown          1     35013    18
/dev/rdsk/c0t3d2        -         -            -                1     35013    19
```

SCSI Port Specification

```
#  raidscan  -p  cl1-r
Port#, TargetID#, Lun# Num(LDEV#...) P/S,   Status, Fence,   LDEV#,  P-Seq#  P-LDEV#
CL1-R, 15,          7    5(100,101...) P-VOL PAIR    NEVER   100,    5678    200
CL1-R, 15,          6    5(200,201...) SMPL  ----    ----    ----    ----    -----
```

```
#  raidscan  -p  cl1-r  -f
Port#, TargetID#, Lun# Num(LDEV#...) P/S,   Status, Fence,   LDEV#,  Vol.Type
CL1-R, 15,          7    5(100,101...) P-VOL PAIR    NEVER   100,    OPEN-3
CL1-R, 15,          6    5(200,201...) SMPL  ----    ----    ----    OPEN-3
```

```
#  raidscan  -pd  /dev/rdsk/c0t15/d7  -fg
Port#, TargetID#, Lun# Num(LDEV#...) P/S,   Status, Fence,   LDEV#,  Group
CL1-R, 15,          7    5(100,101...) P-VOL PAIR    NEVER   100,    oradb
CL1-R, 15,          6    5(200,201...) SMPL  ----    ----    ----    oradb1
```

The specified device is LDEV# **0100**.

Fibre Channel Port Specification

The `ALPA/C,TID#` field displays the value that was converted using the Fibre Channel Address Conversion tables in “Fibre Channel address conversions” .

```
#  raidscan  -p  cl1-r
PORT#/ALPA/C,TID#,LU#..Num(LDEV#...) P/S,   Status, Fence, LDEV#,  P-Seq#  P-LDEV#
CL1-R/ ce/15, 15,   7..5(100,101...) P-VOL PAIR    NEVER  100,    5678    200
CL1-R/ ce/15, 15,   6..5(200,201...) SMPL  ----    ----   ----    ----    -----
```

```
#  raidscan  -p  cl1-r  -f
PORT#/ALPA/C,TID#,LU#..Num(LDEV#...) P/S,   Status, Fence, LDEV#,  Vol.Type
CL1-R/ ce/15, 15,   7..5(100,101...) P-VOL PAIR    NEVER  100,    OPEN-3
CL1-R/ ce/15, 15,   6..5(200,201...) SMPL  ----    ----   ----    OPEN-3
```

SCSI Specification with BC

When using BC, **raidscan** will display the MU# (and the status of MU# **0-2**) under the LUN column (for example, 7-0 for LUN 7, MU 0).

```
#  raidscan  -p  cl1-r
Port#,  TargetID#, Lun# Num(LDEV#...) P/S,  Status, LDEV#,  P-Seq# P-LDEV#
CL1-R,  15,        7-0  5(100,101...) P-VOL PAIR    100,    5678   300
CL1-R,  15,        7-1  5(100,101...) P-VOL PAIR    100,    5678   301
CL1-R,  15,        7-2  5(100,101...) P-VOL PAIR    100,    5678   302
CL1-R,  15,        6-0  5(200,201...) SMPL  ----    ----    ----   ----
CL1-R,  15,        6-1  5(200,201...) SMPL  ----    ----    ----   ----
CL1-R,  15,        6-2  5(200,201...) SMPL  ----    ----    ----   ----
CL1-R,  15,        7-0  5(400,101...) S-VOL PAIR    400,    5678   100
CL1-R,  15,        7-1  5(400,101...) SMPL  ----    ----    ----   ----
CL1-R,  15,        7-2  5(400,101...) SMPL  ----    ----    ----   ----
```

Windows NT does not support the LDM volume. The user must specify $LETALL instead of $Volume as follows.

```
raidscan -pi $LETALL -find sync -g ORA
[SYNC] : ORA ORA_000[-] -> F:\Dsk1\p1    : F:
```

This option cannot specify the device object name as shown below:

```
D:\Vol(Dms,Dmt,Dmr)X\DskY,\Vol(Dms,Dmt,Dmr)X\DskY
```

Related Information

For STDIN file specification information, see Appendix D, “STDIN file formats” .

Command Options for Windows NT/2000/2003

RM provides the following commands specific to Windows NT/2000/2003. These commands are built into the RM commands and are executed by using the **–x** option with any general RM command. For instance, enter:

raidscan –x <command> <arg>

Any general command (not just **raidscan**) can be used; the **–x** option overrides the normal operation of the RM command.

It is not necessary to have an RM instance running to execute these command options when only the subcommand is to be executed.

If you execute one of these Windows NT/2000/2003 commands from a UNIX command line, a syntax error will be returned.

drivescan

Display disk drive and connection information *Windows NT/2000/2003 only*

Syntax *RM_command* **–x drivescan** *stringx,y*

Arguments

RM_command	Any general RM command.
string	Any alphabetic character string; provided for readability.
x,y	Specifies a range of disk drive numbers.

Description The **drivescan** command displays the relationship between hard disk numbers on Windows NT/2000/2003 and the actual physical drives.

Output Fields

`harddisk`*n*	The hard disk number.
`Port`	The port number on the device adapter.
`PhId`	The BUS number in the device adapter port.
`TId`	The target ID of the hard disk that connects to the device adapter port. For information about Fibre Channel address conversion, see Appendix , “Fibre Channel addressing” .
`LUN`	The logical unit number of the hard disk that connects to the device adapter port. This item shows the LDEV# of the LUN that completes a pair.

Example

This example shows **drivescan** executed from the **raidscan** command, and displays the connection of the actual physical drive for disk drive number 0 to 10.

```
raidscan  -x drivescan  harddisk0,10
Harddisk 0..Port[ 1] PhId[ 0] TId[ 0] Lun[ 0] [HITACHI] [DK328H-43WS]
Harddisk 1..Port[ 2] PhId[ 4] TId[ 29] Lun[  0] [HITACHI] [OPEN-3]
            Port[CL1-J] Ser#[ 30053] LDEV#[ 9(0x009)]
            HORC = P-VOL  HOMRCF[MU#0 = SMPL MU#1 = SMPL MU#2 = SMPL]
Harddisk 2..Port[ 2] PhId[ 4] TId[ 29] Lun[  1] [HITACHI] [OPEN-3]
            Port[CL1-J] Ser#[ 30053] LDEV#[10(0x00A)]
            HORC = S-VOL  HOMRCF[MU#0 = SMPL MU#1 = SMPL MU#2 = SMPL]
Harddisk 3..Port[ 2] PhId[ 4] TId[ 29] Lun[  2] [HITACHI] [OPEN-3 ]
            Port[CL1-J] Ser#[ 30053] LDEV#[11(0x00B)]
            HORC = P-VOL  HOMRCF[MU#0 = SMPL MU#1 = SMPL MU#2 = SMPL]
Harddisk 4..Port[ 2] PhId[ 4] TId[ 29] Lun[  3] [HITACHI] [OPEN-3 ]
            Port[CL1-J] Ser#[ 30053] LDEV#[12(0x00C)]
            HORC = S-VOL  HOMRCF[MU#0 = SMPL MU#1 = SMPL MU#2 = SMPL]
Harddisk 5..Port[ 2] PhId[ 4] TId[ 29] Lun[  6] [HITACHI] [OPEN-3-CM]
            Port[CL1-J] Ser#[ 30053] LDEV#[15(0x00F)]
```

Related Information

Appendix , “Fibre Channel addressing” .

env

Display environment variable *Windows NT/2000/2003 only*

Syntax *RM_command* **–x env**

Argument *RM_command* Any general RM command.

Description The **env** command displays an environment variable within a RAID Manager command.

Example This example displays the current value of the HORCC_MRCF environment variable.

```
raidscan -x env HORCC_MRCF
1
```

findcmddev

Search for a command device *Windows NT/2000/2003 only*

Syntax *RM_command* **–x findcmddev** *stringx,y*

Arguments

RM_command	Any general RM command.
string	Any alphabetic character string; provided for readability.
x,y	Specifies a range of disk drive numbers.

Restriction The **findcmddev** command is used when a command device name to be described in the configuration definition file is unknown. RM must not be running when this command is used.

Description The **findcmddev** command searches to see if a command device exists within the range of the specified disk drive numbers. When the command device exists, the command displays the command device in the format described in the RM configuration definition file.

This command searches for a command device as a physical drive, a Logical drive, and a Volume{GUID} for Windows 2000/2003.

If a command device is specified as a logical drive in addition to a Physical Drive, then a drive letter is assigned to the command device. This drive letter should be deleted from the list of those available to general users.

The " Volume{GUID} " must be made by creating a partition, using the disk manager without the filesystem format option, and is used to keep as the same command device even though the physical drive numbers are changed on every reboot in a SAN environment.

Example This example executes **findcmddev**, searching device numbers 0 to 20.

```
raidscan  -x  findcmddev   hdisk0, 20
cmddev of Ser#   62496 = \\.\PhysicalDrive0
cmddev of Ser#   62496 = \\.\E:
cmddev of Ser#   62496 = \\.\Volume{b9b31c79-240a-11d5-a37f-00c00d003b1e}
```

mount

Mount and display a device *Windows NT/2000/2003 only*

Syntax *RM_command* **–x mount**

Windows NT*:*
RM_command **–x mount** *D***:** *hdisk#* [*partition#*] . . .

Windows 2000/2003*:*
RM_command **–x mount** *D***:** *volume#*

RM_command **–x mount** *D***:** [*directory*] *volume#*]

Arguments

RM_command	Any general RM command.
D	Specifies the logical drive letter.
hdisk#	*(Windows NT only)* The disk drive (hard disk) number to be mounted.
partition#	*(Windows NT only)* The partition number within the drive.
directory	*(Windows 2000/2003 only)* The directory mount point on the logical drive.
volume#	*(Windows NT only)* The volume name and number to be mounted.
	(Windows 2000/2003 only) Volume# must be specified in LDM format: '*Vol#* or *Dms#* or *Dmt#* or *Dmr#* '

Description The **mount** command allocates the specified logical drive letter to the specified partition on the disk drive (hard disk). If no arguments are specified, this option displays a list of mounted devices.

Restrictions The partition on the specified disk drive (hard disk) must be recognized on Windows NT/2000/2003.

RAID Manager supports the mount command specifying the device object name (such as “\Device\Harddiskvolume X”). However, Windows 2003 will change the device number for the device object name when it recovers from a failure of the PhysicalDrive. So, the mount command specifying the device object name may fail due to this change.

To overcome this, specify a Volume{GUID} as well as the device object name. If a Volume{GUID} is specified, it will be converted to a device object name during execution. You can discover the Volume{GUID}s by using **inqraid $Vol -fv** command.

Example

```
C:\HORCM\etc>inqraid -CLI $Vol -fv
DEVICE_FILE    PORT    SERIAL  LDEV CTG  H/M/12  SSID R:Group PRODUCT_ID
Volume{cec25efe-d3b8-11d4-aead-00c00d003b1e}\Vol3\Dsk0
               CL2-D    62496  256   -   -       -     -    OPEN-3-CVS-CM
```

Issuing a mount using DefineDosDevice() allows you to force a dismount of the mounted volume by logging off Windows 2000/2003.

Example

```
C:\HORCM\etc>raidscan -x mount E: Volume{cec25efe-d3b8-11d4-aead-00c00d003b1e}
E: <+> HarddiskVolume3
```

Issuing a mount using a Directory mount prevents a forced dismount due to logging off Windows 2000/2003.

Example

```
C:\HORCM\etc>raidscan -x mount E:\ Volume{cec25efe-d3b8-11d4-aead-00c00d003b1e}
E:\ <+> HarddiskVolume3
```

Output Fields

`Drive`	The logical drive.
`FS_name`	The type of file system on the logical drive.
`VOL_name`	The volume label of the logical drive.
`Device Partition`	The name of device and partition mounted to the logical drive.

`Port`
`PathID`
`Targ`
`Lun`
	Port number, path ID, target ID, and LUN on the device adapter mounted to the logical drive. For information on Fibre Channel connection on the port, see Appendix , "Fibre Channel addressing" .

Examples

Windows NT

This Windows NT example executes **mount** from the **pairsplit** command option, mounting the F:\ drive to partition 1 on disk drive 2, and mounting the G:\ drive to partition 1 on disk drive 1. Then a list of mounted devices is displayed.

```
pairsplit -x mount  F: hdisk2  p1  -x mount G:  hdisk1  p1
pairsplit -x mount

Drive FS_name VOL_name Device    Partition ... Port PathID Targ Lun
C:    FAT     Null     Harddisk0 Partition1...  1     0     0    0
F:    FAT     Null     Harddisk2 Partition1...  2     0     5    1
G:    NTFS    Null     Harddisk1 Partition1...  2     0     5    0
Z:    CDFS    Null     CdRom0              ...Unknown
```

Windows 2000/2003

This Windows 2000/2003 example shows the specification of a directory mount point on the logical drive.

```
pairsplit  -x  mount  D:\hd1  \Vol8
D:\hd1 <+> HarddiskVolume8
pairsplit  -x  mount  D:\hd2  \Vol9
D:\hd2 <+> HarddiskVolume9
```

This Windows 2000/2003 example executes the **mount** command from a sub-command option of **pairsplit**. It mounts the F:\ drive to the harddiskvolume2, then displays the mounted devices. When the command is executed without specifying a partition#, the drive is mounted as HarddiskVolume# for Windows 2000/2003.

```
pairsplit -x mount  F: hdisk2
pairsplit  -x mount

Drive     FS_name   VOL_name   Device Partition            ...  Port  PathID  Targ  Lun
C:        NTFS      Null       Harddiskvolume1             ...  Harddisk0
F:        NTFS      Null       Harddiskvolume2             ...  Harddisk1
D:        NTFS      Null       Harddiskvolume3             ...  Harddisk2
D:\hd1    NTFS      Null       Harddiskvolume4             ...  Harddisk3
D:\hd2    NTFS      Null       Harddiskvolume5             ...  Harddisk4
G:        NTFS      Null       HarddiskDmVolumes\…\Volume1 ...  Harddisk5[3]
```

portscan

Display devices on designated ports *Windows NT/2000/2003 only*

Syntax

RM_command **–x portscan** *stringx,y*

–x portscan port0,*n*

Arguments

RM_command	Any general RM command.
string	Any alphabetic character string; provided for readability.
x,*y*	Specifies a range of port numbers.

Description

The **portscan** command displays the physical devices that are connected to the designated port.

Output Fields

`Port`	The port number on the Windows NT/2000/2003 device adapter.
`IID`	The initiator ID on the device adapter port.
`PhId`	The BUS number in the device adapter port.
`TId`	The target ID of the hard disk that connects on the device adapter port. For information about Fibre Channel address conversion, see See Appendix , “Fibre Channel addressing” .
`LUN`	The logical unit number of the hard disk connected to the device adapter port. This item shows LDEV# of the partner that becomes a pair in the disk array.

Example This example executes **portscan** from the **raidscan** command option, and displays the connection of the physical device from port number 0 to 20.

```
raidscan -x portscan port0,20
PORT[ 0] IID [ 7] SCSI Devices
    PhId[ 0] TId[  3] Lun[  0] [MATSHIT] [CD-ROM CR-508 ] ...Claimed
    PhId[ 0] TId[  4] Lun[  0]  [HP          ] [C1537A  ] ...Claimed
PORT[ 1] IID [ 7] SCSI Devices
    PhId[ 0] TId[  0] Lun[  0] [HITACHI]  [DK328H-43WS  ] ...Claimed
PORT[ 2] IID [ 7] SCSI Devices
    PhId[ 0] TId[  5] Lun[  0]  [HITACHI ] [OPEN-3     ] ...Claimed
    PhId[ 0] TId[  5] Lun[  1]  [HITACHI ] [OPEN-3     ] ...Claimed
    PhId[ 0] TId[  5] Lun[  2]  [HITACHI ] [OPEN-3     ] ...Claimed
    PhId[ 0] TId[  6] Lun[  0]  [HITACHI ] [3390-3A    ] ...Claimed
```

setenv

Set environment variable *Windows NT/2000/2003 only*

Syntax *RM_command* **–x setenv** *variable value*

Arguments

RM_command	Any general RM command.
variable	Specifies the environment variable to be set or deleted.
value	Specifies the value or character string of the environment variable to be set.

Description The **setenv** command sets an environment variable within a RAID Manager command.

Restrictions Set environment variable prior to starting RM, unless you are using interactive mode.

Changing an environment variable after an execution error of a RAID Manager command is invalid.

Example This example changes the execution environment from **HORC** to **HOMRCF** by using **raidscan** to change the **HORCC_MRCF** environment variable.

```
raidscan[HORC]:  -x setenv  HORCC_MRCF 1
raidscan[MRCF]:
raidscan[MRCF]:  -x usetenv  HORCC_MRCF
raidscan[HORC]:
```

Related Information **usetenv** (page 218)

sleep

Suspend execution *Windows NT/2000/2003 only*

Syntax *RM_command* **–x sleep** *time*

Arguments

RM_command	Any general RM command.
time	Specifies the sleep time in seconds.

Description The **sleep** command suspends execution for a specified period of time.

sync

Write data to drives *Windows NT/2000/2003 only*

Syntax

RM_command **-x sync** *A: B: C: ...*

RM_command **-x sync all**

RM_command **-x sync** *drive#...*

Windows 2000/2003 only:
RM_command **-x sync** volume#...

RM_command **-x sync** *D*:[*directory*|*directory pattern*]...

Arguments

RM_command Any general RM command.

.A:B:C: [*directory*|*directory pattern*] ...

Data is flushed to the specified logical (and the corresponding physical) drives.

If the specified logical drive has directory mount volumes, then SYNC is executed for all of the volumes on the logical drive.

[*directory*|*directory pattern] (Windows 2000/2003 only)* Specifies the directory mount point on the logical drive.

If *directory* is specified, then SYNC is executed for the specified directory mounted volume only.

If a *directory pattern* is specified then SYNC is executed for the directory mounted volumes identified by *directory pattern.*

all Data is flushed to all logical drives (and the physical drives corresponding to the logical drives assuming that they are hard disks), excluding the logical drive used by

	RM and the logical drive supporting the current Windows directory.
D	Data is flushed to the specified logical (and the corresponding physical) drive.
Volume#...	*(Windows 2000/2003 only)* The LDM Volumes to be flushed. Volume# must be specified in LDM format: '*\Vol#* or *\Dms#* or *\Dmt#* or *\Dmr#* '

Description

The **sync** command writes unwritten data remaining on the Windows NT/2000/2003 system to the logical and physical drives.

If the logical drives designated as the objects of the sync command is not opened to any applications, then sync flushes the system buffer to a drive and performs a dismount.

If the logical drives designated as the objects of the sync command are already opened to any applications, then sync only flushes the system buffer to a drive.

The **sync** command will accept a Volume{GUID} as well as the device object name. If you specify a Volume{GUID}, then RM will convert the Volume{GUID} to a device object name on execution..

Example

```
C:\HORCM\etc>raidscan -x sync Volume{cec25efe-d3b8-11d4-aead-00c00d003b1e}
[SYNC] Volume{cec25efe-d3b8-11d4-aead-00c00d003b1e}
```

Examples

The following example executes SYNC for all of the volumes on a logical drive.

```
pairsplit  -x  sync  D:
[SYNC] D: HarddiskVolume2
[SYNC] D:\hd1 HarddiskVolume8
[SYNC] D:\hd2 HarddiskVolume9
```

The following example executes SYNC for specified directory mounted volume.

```
pairsplit  -x sync  D:\hd1
[SYNC] D:\hd1 HarddiskVolume8
```

The following example executes SYNC for the directory mounted volumes identified by the *directory pattern* “D:\h”.

```
pairsplit  -x  sync  D:\h
[SYNC] D:\hd1 HarddiskVolume8
[SYNC] D:\hd2 HarddiskVolume9
```

The following example executes SYNC for all of the volumes on the logical drives with directory mount volumes.

```
pairsplit  -x  sync  all
[SYNC] C: HarddiskVolume1
[SYNC] D:\hd1 HarddiskVolume8
[SYNC] D:\hd2 HarddiskVolume9
[SYNC] G: HarddiskVolume10
```

The following example flushes HarddiskVolumeX:

```
pairsplit  -x sync  \VolX
```

The following example executes **sync** from a sub-command option of **pairsplit**. After flushing remaining data to the logical drives "C:" and "D:", Read/Write access to the secondary volume is enabled.

```
pairsplit -x sync  C: D:  -g  oradb  -rw
```

The following example executes **sync** from a sub-command option of **pairsplit**. After flushing remaining data to harddisk2 and harddisk3, Read/Write access to the secondary volume is enabled in simplex mode.

```
pairsplit -x sync  hdisk2  hdisk3 -g oradb -S
```

This following example flushes the system buffer before the pairsplit without unmounting the PVOL (open state), and provides a warning.

```
pairsplit -x sync  C:

WARNING: Only flushed to [\\.\C:] drive due to be
opening.

[SYNC] C: HarddiskVolume3
```

umount

Unmount a device *Windows NT/2000/2003 only*

Syntax

RM_command **–x umount** *D***:**

Windows 2000/2003
RM_command **–x umount** *D***:** [*directory*]

Arguments

RM_command	Any general RM command.
D	Specifies the logical drive letter to unmount
directory	*(Windows 2000 /2003 only)* The directory mount point on the logical drive..

Restriction

Before issuing the **umount** command, all drive activity must be stopped, including system activity and user applications. If activity is not stopped, the unmount operation is not completed and a “device busy” error is reported.

Description

The **umount** command unmounts a logical drive and deletes the drive letter. Before deleting the drive letter, the command automatically executes the **sync** command for the specified logical drive (flushes unwritten buffer data to the disk).

Output Fields

`Drive`	Displays the logical drive on Windows NT/2000/2003.
`FS_name`	Displays the file system name of the logical drive on Windows NT/2000/2003.
`VOL_name`	Displays the volume label name of the logical drive on Windows NT/2000/2003.
`Device` `Partition`	Displays the name of the device and partition mounted to the logical drive on Windows NT/2000/2003.
`Port` `PathID`	Displays the port number, path ID, target ID, and LUN on the device adapter mounted to the logical drive on

`Targ` `Lun`	Windows NT/2000/2003.
	For information on Fibre Channel connection on the port, see Appendix , “Fibre Channel addressing” .

Examples

Windows 2000/2003

This Windows 2000/2003 example shows the specification of a directory mount point on the logical drive.

```
pairsplit  -x  umount  D:\hd1
D:\hd1 <-> HarddiskVolume8
pairsplit  -x  umount  D:\hd2
D:\hd2 <-> HarddiskVolume9
```

This example executes **umount** from the **pairsplit** command option, after unmounting the F:\ drive and G:\ drive. Read/Write access to the secondary volume is enabled, and mounted devices are displayed.

```
pairsplit  -x  umount  F:  -x umount  G: -g oradb -rw
pairsplit  -x mount
Drive   FS_name  VOL_name  Device   Partition ... Port PathID Targ Lun
C:      FAT       Null     Harddisk0  Partition1 ... 1    0    0     0
Z:      Unknown   Unknown  CdRom0                ...  Unknown
```

usetenv

Delete environment variable *Windows NT/2000/2003 only*

Syntax *RM_command* **–x usetenv** *variable*

Arguments

RM_command	Any general RM command.
variable	Specifies the environment variable to be deleted.

Description The **usetenv** command deletes an environment variable within a RAID Manager command.

Restrictions Changing an environment variable after an execution error of a RAID Manager command is invalid.

Example This example changes the execution environment from **HORC** to **HOMRCF** by using **raidscan** to change the **HORCC_MRCF** environment variable.

```
raidscan[HORC]:  -x setenv  HORCC_MRCF 1
raidscan[MRCF]:
raidscan[MRCF]:  -x usetenv  HORCC_MRCF
raidscan[HORC]:
```

Related Information **setenv** (page 211)

Data Integrity Check Commands

To set and verify the validation check parameters for Data Integrity Check, RM provides the following commands.

raidvchkset

Integrity checking command *Data Integrity Check only*

Syntax **raidvchkset** { **–h** | **–q** | **–z** | **–g** *group* | **–d** *pair_vol* **–d**[**g**] *raw_device* [*MU#*] | **–d**[**g**] *seq# LDEV#* [*MU#*] | **–nomsg | –vt** [*type*] | **–vs** *bsize* [*SLBA ELBA*] [**-vg** [type] [rtime]}

Arguments

–h Displays Help/Usage and version information.

–q Terminates interactive mode and exits this command.

–z This option makes this command enter interactive mode.

–zx *(Not for use with MPE/iX or OpenVMS)* This option prevents using RM in interactive mode.

–g *group* Specifies a group name from the configuration definition file.

The command is executed for the specified group unless the **–d** *pair_vol* option is specified.

–d *pair_vol* Specifies a paired logical volume name from the configuration definition file. The command is executed only for the specified paired logical volume.

–d[**g**] *raw_device* [*MU#*]

Searches the RM configuration file (local instance) for a volume that matches the specified raw device. If a volume is found, the command is executed on the paired volume (**–d**) or group (**–dg**).

This option is effective without specification of the **–g** *group* option.

If the volume is contained in two groups, the command is executed on the first volume encountered. If MU# is not specified, it defaults to 0.

–d[**g**] *seq# LDEV# [MU#*]

Searches the RM instance configuration file (local instance) for a volume that matches the specified sequence # and LDEV. If a volume is found, the command is executed on the paired logical volume (**–d**) or group (**–dg**).

This option is effective without specifying the **–g** *group* option.

If the volume is contained in two groups, the command is executed on the first volume encountered only.

seq# LDEV# can be specified in hexadecimal by addition of **0x**, or decimal.

–nomsg

Used to suppress messages when this command is executed from a user program.

This option must be specified at the beginning of the command arguments.

–vt [*type*]

Specifies the data type of the target volumes as an Oracle database. If *type* is not specified, this option disables all checking.

Valid values for *type*:

redo8
Sets the parameter for validation checking as Oracle redo log files (including archive logs) prior to Oracle9i. This option sets *bsize* to 1 (512 bytes) for Solaris or 2 (1024 bytes) for HP-UX.

data8
Sets the parameter for validation checking as Oracle data files prior to Oracle9i.

redo9
Sets the parameter for validation checking as Oracle redo log files for Oracle9iR2 or later. This option sets *bsize* to 1 (512 bytes) for Solaris or 2 (1024 bytes) for

HP-UX.

data9
Sets the parameter for validation checking as Oracle data files (including control files) for Oracle9iR2 later.

–vs *bsize* [*SLBA ELBA*]

Specifies the data block size of Oracle I/O and a region on a target volume for validation checking.

bsize is used for specifying the data block size of Oracle I/O, in units of 512 bytes. *bsize* is able to specify between 1 (512 bytes) and 128 (64 kilobytes), but the effective size for Oracle is between 1 (512 bytes) and 64 (32 kilobytes).

If the **–vs** option is also used for redo log volumes to specify *SLBA ELBA*, *bsize* must be set to **2** for HP-UX or **1** for Solaris.

SLBA ELBA specifies a region defined between Start_LBA and End_LBA on a target volume for checking, in units of 512 bytes. The effective region is from 1 to end-of-LU.

SLBA ELBA can be specified in hexadecimal by addition of **0x**, or decimal.

If this option is not specified, then a region for a target volume is set as all blocks (*SLBA*=0; *ELBA*=0).

-vg [type][rtime]

Specifies the following guard types to the target volumes for HP StorageWorks LUN Security XP Extension.

If [type] is not specified, then this option disables all guarding. If no guard type has been specified, then the volume will be unguarded (read and write operations from the host as well as use as an S-VOL will be allowed).

If [type] has been specified previously to set a guard level and the time specified in [rtime] has not elapsed, the guard characteristics of the target volumes will not be changed.

If [type] has been specified previously to set a guard level and the time specified in [rtime] has elapsed, then not specifying [type] will disable all guarding for the target volumes.

NOTE: Once a volume has guard attribute set, write access for that volume cannot be restored by the customer until [rtime] has expired. If a volume has been set to a guarded state by accident, contact HP support for recovery of the volume. Valid values for *type*:

inv
Conceals the target volumes from the SCSI Inquiry command by responding with “unpopulated volume.”

Sz0
The target volumes reply with “SIZE 0” through the SCSI read capacity command.

rwd
Disables the target volumes from reading and writing.

wtd

Disables the target volumes from writing. The volumes cannot be used as an S-VOL or written by a host.

svd

Disables the target volumes so they cannot become an S-VOL. Read and Write operations from hosts are still allowed.

[rtime]

Specifies the data retention time, in days. If [rtime] is not specified, then the data retention time never expires.

Disk array microcode versions 21-06-xx and 21-07-xx ignore this option and always set the retention time to never expire.

If [rtime] is not specified, then the default time defined by the microcode version will be used. The default time is “infinite” in microcode version 21-06-xx or 21-07-xx. The default time is “zero” in microcode version 21-08-xx.

Description

The **raidvchkset** command sets the parameters for protection checking to the specified volumes and can also be used to turn off all protection checking without specifying *type* when the time is specified in [rtime] and when the protection was originally set or later extended has elapsed.

The unit for the protection checking is based on a group in the RAID Manager configuration file.

When enabling DIC using **raidvchkset**, if there are redundant paths to the same LUN (for example, when using HP StorageWorks Auto Path or LVM pv-links), it is not necessary to enable **raidvchkset** on each path. Enable DIC on only one path, usually the path specified in the RM **horcm.conf** configuration file.

Returned values

Return values in **exit()** allow you to check execution results from a user program. Normal termination returns **0**.

Examples

This example sets the volumes for the oralog group as redolog file prior to Oracle9i.

```
raidvchkset -g oralog -vt redo8
```

This example sets the volumes for the oradat group as data file, where the Oracle block size is 8 kilobytes.

```
raidvchkset -g oradat -vt data8 -vs 16
```

This example sets to the volumes for the oradat group as data file, where the Oracle block size is 16 kilobytes.

```
raidvchkset -g oradat -vt data8 -vs 32
```

This example disables all volume checking for the oralog group.

```
raidvchkset -g oralog -vt
```

This example disables all writing to volumes for the oralog group:

```
raidvchkset -g oralog -vg wtd
```

This example disables all writing and retention time for the oralog group:

```
raidvchkset -g oralog -vg wtd 365
```

This example disables guarding for the oralog group:

```
raidvchkset -g oralog -vg
```

This example disables writing for the oralog group.

```
raidvchkset -g oralog -vg wtd
```

This example disables writing and sets as retention time of 365 days.

```
raidvchkset -g oralog -vg wtd 365
```

This example releases all guarding for the oralog group.

```
raidvchkset -g oralog -vg
```

Error codes

This command is rejected with EX_ERPERM by connectivity checking between RAID Manager and the disk array.

The **raidvchkset -vg** option returns the following error code as well as generic errors:

Category	Error Code	Error Message	Value
Volume Status Unrecoverable	EX_EPRORT	Mode changes denied due to retention time	208

The means that the target volume mode cannot be changed, because retention time prevents it. Confirm the retention time for the target volume by using **raidvchkscan -v gflag**.

Flags The command sets the following four flags each for the guarding types:

Type	**INQ**	**RCAP**	**READ**	**WRITE**
Inv	1	1	1	1
Sz0	0	1	1	1
Rwd	0	0	1	1
Wtd	0	0	0	1

raidvchkdsp

Integrity checking confirmation command *Data Integrity Check only*

Syntax **raidvchkdsp** { **–h** | **–q** | **–z** | **–g** *group* | **–d** *pair_vol* **–d**[**g**] *raw_device* [*MU#*] | **–d**[**g**] *seq# LDEV# [MU#]* | **–f**[**xd**] | **–v** *operation* }

Arguments

–h Displays Help/Usage and version information.

–q Terminates interactive mode and exits this command.

–z This option makes this command enter interactive mode.

–zx *(Not for use with MPE/iX or OpenVMS)* This option prevents using RM in interactive mode.

–g *group* Specifies a group name from the configuration definition file.

The command is executed for the specified group unless the **–d** *pair_vol* option is specified.

–d *pair_vol* Specifies a paired logical volume name from the configuration definition file. The command is executed only for the specified paired logical volume.

–d[**g**] *raw_device* [*MU#*]

Searches the RM configuration file (local instance) for a volume that matches the specified raw device. If a volume is found, the command is executed on the paired volume (**–d**) or group (**–dg**).

This option is effective without specification of the **–g** *group* option.

If the volume is contained in two groups, the command is executed on the first volume encountered. If MU# is not specified, it defaults to 0.

–d[**g**] *seq# LDEV#* [*MU#*]

Searches the RM instance configuration file (local instance) for a volume that matches the specified sequence # and LDEV. If a volume is found, the command is executed on the paired logical volume (**–d**) or group (**–dg**).

This option is effective without specifying the **–g** *group* option.

If the volume is contained in two groups, the command is executed on the first volume encountered only.

seq# LDEV# can be specified in hexadecimal by addition of **0x**, or decimal.

–f[**xd**]

–fx displays the LDEV/STLBA/ENLBA number in hexadecimal.

–fd displays the relationship between the Device_File and the paired volumes, based on the group (as defined in the local instance configuration definition file). If the Device_File column shows "unknown" to either the local or the remote host (instance), then the volume is not recognized on the current host, and the command is rejected in protection mode.

Example

```
raidvchkdsp -g vg01 -fd -v cflag

Group  PairVol  Device_File   Seq# LDEV#   BR-W-E-E  MR-W-B  BR-W-B  SR-W-B-S
vg01   oradb1   c4t0d2        2332    2     D E B R   D D D   D E E   D E D D
vg01   oradb2   c4t0d3        2332    3     D E B R   D D D   D E E   D E D D
```

–v *operation*

Specifies an *operation* that displays the each parameter for validation checking.

Valid values for *operation*:

cflag
Displays all flags for checking regarding data block validation for target volumes.

BR-W-E-E: Displays the flags for checking data block size.
R=Read → E=Enable and D=Disable
W=Write → E=Enable and D=Disable
E=Endian format → L=Little and B=Big
E=Not rejected when validation error → W=Write and R=Read

MR-W-B: Displays the flags for checking block header information.
MR=Read → E=Enable and D=Disable
W=Write → E=Enable and D=Disable
B=Block #0 → E=Enable and D=Disable

BR-W-B: Displays the flags for checking data block number information.
BR=Read → E=Enable and D=Disable
W=Write → E=Enable and D=Disable
B=Data Block → E=Enable and D=Disable

SR-W-B-S: Displays the flags for checking data block checksum.
SR=Read → E=Enable and D=Disable
W=Write → E=Enable and D=Disable
B=Block #0 → E=Enable and D=Disable
S=Checksum → E=Enable and D=Disable

offset:

Displays the range setting for data block size of Oracle I/O and a region on a target volume for validation checking.

Bsize: Displays the data block size of Oracle I/O, in units of bytes.

STLBA: Displays the Start of LBA on a target volume for checking, in units of LBAs.

ENLBA: Displays the End of LBA on a target volume for checking, in units of LBAs. If STLBA and ENLBA are both zero, this means to be checked as all blocks.

BNM: Displays whether this validation is disabled or enabled. If BNM is 0 then this validation is disabled.

-v gflag
Display the flags for guarding for target volumes.

Example

```
raidvchkdsp -g vg01 -fd -v gflag

Group    PairVol Device_File     Seq# LDEV#  GI-C-R-W-S  PI-C-R-W-S R-Time
vg01     oradb1  c4t0d2          2332    2    E E D D E   E E D D E    365
vg01     oradb2  c4t0d3          2332    3    E E D D E   E E D D E      -
```

GI-C-R-W-S displays the protection flags for the target volume.

I. Inquiry command. “E” for enabled and “D” for disabled.

C. Read Capacity command. “E” for enabled and “D” for disabled.

R. Read command. “E” for enabled and “D” for disabled.

W. Write command. “E” for enabled and “D” for disabled.

S. Ability to become an S-VOL. “E” for enabled and “D” for disabled.

PI-C-R-W-S displays the permission flags, showing whether the permission flags can be changed to enable.

I. “I” flag permission.“E” indicates that the “I” flag can be changed to enable. “D” indicates that it cannot.

C. “C” flag permission.“E” indicates that the “C” flag can be changed to enable. “D” indicates that it cannot.

R. “R” flag permission.“E” indicates that the “R” flag can be changed to enable. “D” indicates that it cannot.

W. “W” flag permission.“E” indicates that the “W” flag can be changed to enable. “D” indicates that it cannot.

S. “S” flag permission.“E” indicates that the “S” flag can be changed to enable. “D” indicates that it cannot.

R-Time. The rention time for write protection, in days. A hyphen (-) indicates that the retention time is “infinite.”

errcnt:

Displays statistical information for errors counted on the target volumes. The error count is cleared when the individual flag for integrity checking is disabled.

CfEC: Displays the error counter for checking of block size validation.

MNEC: Displays the error counter for checking of block header validation.

SCEC: Displays the error counter for checking of data block checksum validation.

BNEC: Displays the error counter for checking of block number validation.

Description

The **raidvchkdsp** command displays the parameters for protection checking of the specified volumes. The unit of checking for the protection is based on the group of RM configuration file.

A nonpermitted volume is shown without LDEV# information (LDEV# information is **-**).

Error codes This command is rejected with EX_ERPERM by connectivity checking between RAID Manager and the disk array.

Examples

```
# raidvchkdsp -g vg01 -fd -v cflag

Group    PairVol Device_File    Seq# LDEV#  BR-W-E-E  MR-W-B  BR-W-B  SR-W-B-S
vg01     oradb1  Unknown        2332    -    - - - -   - - -   - - -   - - - -
vg01     oradb2  c4t0d3         2332    3    D E B R   D D D   D E E   D E D D
```

```
# raidvchkdsp -g vg01 -fd -v offset

Group    PairVol Device_File    Seq# LDEV#  Bsize         STLBA          ENLBA BNM
vg01     oradb1  c4t0d2          2332    2   1024              1          102400   9
vg01     oradb2  c4t0d3          2332    3   1024              1          102400   9
```

```
# raidvchkdsp -g vg01 -fd -v cflag

Group    PairVol Device_File  Seq# LDEV#     BR-W-E-E    MR-W-B   BR-W-B    SR-W-B-S
vg01     oradb1  c4t0d2        2332     2     D E B R     D D D    D E E      D E D D
vg01     oradb2  c4t0d3        2332     3     D E B R     D D D    D E E      D E D D
```

```
# raidvchkdsp -g vg01 -fd -v errcnt

Group   PairVol Device_File   Seq# LDEV#    CfEC      MNEC      SCEC      BNEC
vg01    oradb1  c4t0d2        2332     2       0         0         0         0
vg01    oradb2  c4t0d3        2332     3       0         0         0         0
```

raidvchkscan

Integrity checking confirmation command *Data Integrity Check only*

Syntax

raidvchkdsp { **–h** | **–q** | **–z** | **–p** *port* [**hgrp**] **–pd[g]** *raw_device* | **–s** *seq#* | **–t** *target* | **–l** *LUN* | **–fx** | **–v** *operation* }

Arguments

–h
Displays Help/Usage and version information.

–q
Terminates interactive mode and exits this command.

–z
This option makes this command enter interactive mode.

–zx
(Not for use with MPE/iX or OpenVMS) This option prevents using RM in interactive mode.

–p *port*
Specifies the name of a port to be scanned by selecting it from CL1-A to CL1-R (excluding CL1-I and CL1-O), or CL2-A to CL2-R (excluding CL2-I and CL2-O). For the expanded port, specify CL3-a to CL3-r or CL4-a to CL4-r. Port names are not case sensitive

This option always must be specified if **–pd** *raw_device* option is not specified.

[**hgrp**] is specified to display only the LDEVs mapped to a host group on a port for disk array.

–pd[g] *raw_device*
Specifies a *raw_device* name.

Finds the *Seq#* and port name on the disk array and scans the port of the disk array (which corresponds to the unit ID) and searches for the unit ID from *Seq#*.

This option always must be specified if the **–find** or **–p** *port* option is not specified. If this option is specified, the **–s** *Seq#* option is invalid.

-pdg specifies the LUNs displayed in host view by locating a host group for XP 128 and XP 1024 arrays.

–s *seq#*	Specifies the serial number of the disk array on multiple disk array connections when you cannot specify the unit ID that is contained in the **–p** *port* option. This option searches corresponding unit ID from *Seq#* and it scans the port that is specified by **–p** *port* option. If this option is specified, the unit ID that is contained in **–p** *port* is invalid.
–t *target*	Specifies a SCSI/Fibre target ID of a specified port. If this option is not specified, the command applies to all targets.
–l *LUN*	Specifies the LUN of a specified SCSI/Fibre target. If this option is not specified, the command applies to all LUNs. A LUN-only specification without designating a target ID is invalid.
–fx	Displays the LDEV/STLBA/ENLBA number in hexadecimal.
–v *operation*	Specifies an *operation* that displays each parameter for validation checking. Valid values for *operation*: **cflag** Displays all flags for checking regarding data block validation for target volumes. BR-W-E-E: Displays the flags for checking data block size. R=Read → E=Enable and D=Disable W=Write → E=Enable and D=Disable E=Endian format → L=Little and B=Big E=Not rejected when validation error → W=Write and R=Read MR-W-B: Displays the flags for checking block header

information.
MR=Read → E=Enable and D=Disable
W=Write → E=Enable and D=Disable
B=Block #0 → E=Enable and D=Disable

BR-W-B: Displays the flags for checking data block number information.
BR=Read → E=Enable and D=Disable
W=Write → E=Enable and D=Disable
B=Data Block → E=Enable and D=Disable

SR-W-B-S: Displays the flags for checking data block checksum.
SR=Read → E=Enable and D=Disable
W=Write → E=Enable and D=Disable
B=Block #0 → E=Enable and D=Disable
S=Checksum → E=Enable and D=Disable

offset

Displays the range setting for data block size of Oracle I/O and a region on a target volume for validation checking.

Bsize
Displays the data block size of Oracle I/O, in units of bytes.

STLBA: Displays the Start of LBA on a target volume for checking, in units of LBAs.

ENLBA: Displays the End of LBA on a target volume for checking, in units of LBAs. If STLBA and ENLBA are both zero, this means to be checked as all blocks.

BNM: Displays whether this validation is disabled or enabled. If BNM is 0 then this validation is disabled.

errcnt

Displays the statistical information about errors on the target volumes. Statistical information is cleared when the individual flag for integrity checking is disabled.

CfEC: Displays the error counter for checking of block size validation.

MNEC: Displays the error counter for checking of block header validation.

SCEC: Displays the error counter for checking of data block checksum validation.

BNEC: Displays the error counter for checking of block number validation.

-v gflag
Display the flags for for block data validation for target volumes.

Example

```
# raidvchkscan -p CL1-A -v gflag

PORT# /ALPA/C TID# LU#   Seq#  Num LDEV#   GI-C-R-W-S  PI-C-R-W-S R-Time
CL1-A / ef/ 0    0   0   2332    1     0    E E D D E   E E D D E    365
CL1-A / ef/ 0    0   1   2332    1     1    E E D D E   E E D D E      -
CL1-A / ef/ 0    0   2   2332    1     2    E E D D E   E E E E E      0
```

GI-C-R-W-S displays the protection flags for the target volume.

I. Inquiry command. “E” for enabled and “D” for disabled.

C. Read Capacity command. “E” for enabled and “D” for disabled.

R. Read command. “E” for enabled and “D” for disabled.

W. Write command. “E” for enabled and “D” for disabled.

S. Ability to become an S-VOL. “E” for enabled and “D” for disabled.

PI-C-R-W-S displays the permission flags, showing whether the permission flags can be changed to enable.

I. “I” flag permission.“E” indicates that the “I” flag can be changed to enable. “D” indicates that it cannot.

C. “C” flag permission.“E” indicates that the “C” flag can be changed to enable. “D” indicates that it cannot.

R. “R” flag permission.“E” indicates that the “R” flag can be changed to enable. “D” indicates that it cannot.

W. “W” flag permission.“E” indicates that the “W” flag can be changed to enable. “D” indicates that it cannot.

S. “S” flag permission.“E” indicates that the “S” flag can be changed to enable. “D” indicates that it cannot.

R-Time. The rention time for write protection, in days. A hyphen (-) indicates that the retention time is “infinite.”

Description

The **raidvchkscan** command sets the parameters for protection checking to the specified volumes.The unit of checking for the protection is based on the **raidscan** command.

Error codes

This command is rejected with EX_ERPERM by connectivity checking between RAID Manager XP and the disk array.

RAID Manager XP reports the following message to the syslog file as an integrity check error when each statistical information counted an error is updated.

HORCM_103 Detected a validation check error on this volume (*dev_group*, *dev_name*, unit#*X*, ldev#*Y*): CfEC=*n*,

MNEC=*n*, SCEC=*n*, BNEC=*n*

Cause: A validation error occurred on the database volume, or validation parameters for this volume are invalid.

Action to be taken: Confirm the following items, and use the **raidvchkdsp –v** *operation* command for verifying the validation parameters.

Check whether the block size (**–vs** *size*) is an appropriate size.

Check whether the type for checking (**–vt** *type*) is an appropriate type.

Check whether the data validations are disabled for LVM configuration changes.

Check whether the data validations are not used based on the file system.

Check whether the redo log and data file are separated among the volumes.

Examples

```
# raidvchkscan -p CL1-A -v cflag

PORT# /ALPA/C TID# LU#   Seq#  Num LDEV#   BR-W-E-E  MR-W-B  BR-W-B  SR-W-B-S
CL1-A / ef/ 0    0   0   2332    1     0    D E B R   D D D   D E E   D E D D
CL1-A / ef/ 0    0   1   2332    1     1    D E B R   D D D   D E E   D E D D
CL1-A / ef/ 0    0   2   2332    1     2    D E B R   D D D   D E E   D E D D
CL1-A / ef/ 0    0   3   2332    1     3    D E B R   D D D   D E E   D E D D
CL1-A / ef/ 0    0   4   2332    1     4    D E B R   D D D   D E E   D E D D
```

```
# raidvchkscan -p CL1-A -v offset

PORT# /ALPA/C TID# LU#   Seq#  Num LDEV#   Bsize          STLBA        ENLBA BNM
CL1-A / ef/ 0    0   0   2332    1     0    1024              1       102400   9
CL1-A / ef/ 0    0   1   2332    1     1    1024              1       102400   9
CL1-A / ef/ 0    0   2   2332    1     2    1024              1       102400   9
CL1-A / ef/ 0    0   3   2332    1     3    1024              1       102400   9
CL1-A / ef/ 0    0   4   2332    1     4    1024              1       102400   9
```

```
# raidvchkscan -p CL1-A -v errcnt

PORT# /ALPA/C TID# LU#   Seq#  Num LDEV#      CfEC       MNEC       SCEC       BNEC
CL1-A / ef/ 0    0   0   2332    1     0          0          0          0          0
CL1-A / ef/ 0    0   1   2332    1     1          0          0          0          0
CL1-A / ef/ 0    0   2   2332    1     2          0          0          0          0
CL1-A / ef/ 0    0   3   2332    1     3          0          0          0          0
CL1-A / ef/ 0    0   4   2332    1     4          0          0          0          0
```

5

Troubleshooting RAID Manager

This chapter lists RM errors and describes the problem, typical cause, and solution for each.

Error reporting

If you have a problem with RM, first make sure that the problem is not caused by the host or the connection to the disk array.

The tables in this chapter provide detailed troubleshooting information:

“Operational notes” on page 243
“Error codes” on page 246
“Command return values” on page 248
“Command errors” on page 251

If a failure occurs in CA or BC volumes, find the failure in the paired volumes, recover the volumes, and continue operation in the original system. If a CA command terminates abnormally, see the RM activation log file, error log file, and trace file to identify the cause.

RM monitors failures in the paired volumes at regular intervals. When it detects a failure, it sends an error message to the host syslog file. When a failure is detected and reported, collect the data in the RM error log file and trace data file (in all files under **$HORCM_LOG**) to determine the cause of the error.

Operational notes

Error	Solution
Coexistence of Logical Volume Manager (LVM) mirror and CA	When the LVM mirror and CA volumes are used together, the LVM mirror handles write errors by switching LVM P-VOL volumes. Thus, the fence level of mirrored P-VOLs used by the LVM must be set to **data**. One instance of LVM must not be allowed to see both the P-VOL and S-VOL of the same BC or CA pair. This will cause an LVM error in that two volumes will contain the same LVM volume group ID. If you wish to split and mount an S-VOL on the same host as the P-VOL, you must first use the **vgchgid** command to give the S-VOL a new LVM volume group ID.
Command device	Each BC/CA command is executed by issuing a command to the command device. The BC/CA command is read from or written from or into a specific block area of the command device. Therefore, the command device cannot be used by the user. In addition, this device must not belong to an LVM volume group.
Duplicated write error	(*CA only*) Check the error notification command or the syslog file to identify the failed paired volume. Issue an RM command manually to the identified failed paired volume to try to recover it. If the secondary volume is the failed volume, issue the **pairresync** command to recover it. If the primary volume fails, delete or suspend the pair (**pairsplit** command) and use the secondary volume as the primary volume, and create another pair.
RM command termination error (see the command log file and RM log file for error details.)	If an RM command terminates abnormally because of a remote server failure, recover the machine from the failure, and then reexecute the RM command. If a hardware error occurs, read the log files and contact the HP support center.

(continued)

Error	Solution
horctakeover (swap-takeover)	When executing **horctakeover** on a standby server manually, I/O activity on the servers (for the pertinent CA volumes) must be stopped.
Host machines that can own opposite sides of a CA pair	Host machines must be running the same operating system and the same architecture.
New RM installations	After a new host system has been constructed, a RM failure to start can occur due to an improper environmental setting or an inaccurate configuration definition file. Use the RM activation log file for RM error definitions.
Host failure	If a failure occurs on host A (with application failover software installed), host B detects the failure and issues a takeover command making the secondary volumes usable. If the secondary volumes can continue processing, host B takes over processing from host A. While host B continues to process (swap-takeover) the command, the volumes are swapped so that the secondary volumes become the primary volumes and the primary volumes become the secondary volumes. When host A has recovered from the failure, it can take back ownership and control through another **swap-takeover** command.
Secondary volume failure	If the primary volume detects a failure in the secondary volume, pair writing is suspended. The primary volume changes the paired volume status to PSUE. (The fence level determines whether host A continues processing, that is, writing, or host B takes over from host A.) RM detects the change in status and sends a message to the syslog. If host A had initiated a monitoring command, a message appears on host A. When the secondary volume recovers, host A updates the S-VOL data by running the **pairsplit –S**, **paircreate –vl**, or **pairresync** command.
Startup failure	When the P-VOL server boots up, the secondary volume can be updated. If the secondary volume is used by the LVM, the volume group of the LVM must be deactivated. The secondary volume must only be mounted to a host when the volume is in PSUS state or in SMPL mode. The secondary volume must not be mounted automatically in any host boot sequence.

(continued)

Error	Solution
SCSI alternating path restrictions	If the primary and secondary volumes are on the same server, alternate pathing, for example, pvlink, cannot be used (from primary volume to secondary volume). Use of SCSI alternative pathing to a volume pair is limited to one side of a pair. The hidden S-VOL option can avoid undesirable alternate pathing.

Error codes

Error Code	Problem	Cause	Solution
HORCM_001	The RM log file cannot be opened.	The file cannot be created in the RM directory.	Create space on the root disk.
HORCM_002	The RM trace file cannot be opened.	The file cannot be created in the RM directory.	Create space on the root disk.
HORCM_003	The RM daemon could not produce enough processes to complete the request.	The RM daemon attempted to create more processes than the maximum allowable number.	Close any unnecessary programs or increase the maximum number of allowed processes.
HORCM_004	RM failed, resulting in a fatal internal error.	An unidentifiable RM error occurred.	Restart the system, and call the HP support center.
HORCM_005	RM failed to create the end point for remote communication.	RM failed to create a socket, or an error exists in the RM configuration file **$HORCM_CONF**.	See the RM startup log to identify the cause of the error.
HORCM_006	RM memory allocation failed.	RM memory could not be secured.	Increase the virtual memory of the system, or close any unnecessary programs.
HORCM_007	An error exists in the RM setup file.	An error exists in the RM setup file.	See the startup log and edit the parameters.
HORCM_008	The RM configuration file parameters could not be read.	An error exists in the format or parameters of the RM configuration file **$HORCM_CONF**.	See the RM startup log to identify the cause of the error.

(continued)

Error Code	Problem	Cause	Solution
HORCM_009	CA/RM connection to RM failed.	System devices are improperly connected, or an error exists in the RM configuration file **$HORCM_CONF**.	See the RM startup log to identify the cause of the error.
HORCM_101	CA/RM and RM communication failed.	A system I/O error occurred or an error exists in the RM configuration file **$HORCM_CONF**.	See the RM startup log to identify the cause of the error.
HORCM_102	The volume is suspended.	The pairing status was suspended.	Call the HP support center.
HORCM_103	A validation check error was detected on the volume.	A validation error occurred on the database volume or validation parameters for this volume are illegal.	Confirm the following items, and use the **raidvchkdsp -v <op>** command to verify the validation parameters. The Block size(-vs <size>) is appropriate. The type for checking (-vt <type>) is appropriate. Data validation is disabled for LVM configuration changes. Data validation is not used based on the File system. The redo log and data file are on separate volumes.

Command return values

For error descriptions, see “Error codes” on page 246.

Return Value	Command Error	Error Message
211	EX_ERPERM	RAID permission denied.
212	EX_ENQSIZ	Unmatched pairing volume size.
213	EX_ENPERM	LDEV permission denied.
214	EX_ENQCTG	Unmatched CTGID.
215	EX_ENXCTG	No such CT group (Open Systems volume)
216	EX_ENTCTG	Extended CT group across disk arrays.
217	EX_ENOCTG	Not enough CT groups in the disk array.
218	EX_ENQSER	Unmatched Serial# / disk array unit ID
219	EX_ENOUNT	Specified disk array unit does not exist.
220	EX_INVMUN	Invalid MU number used with CA or BC.
221	EX_CMDRJE	An order of the control command was rejected.
222	EX_INVVOL	Invalid volume status.
223	EX_VOLCRE	Local and/or remote volume currency error.
224	EX_VOLCUE	Local volume currency error.
225	EX_VOLCUR	S-VOL currency error.
226	EX_INVRCD	Invalid return code.
227	EX_ENLDEV	Invalid logical device defined.
228	EX_INVSTP	Invalid pair status.
229	EX_INCSTG	Inconsistent status in group.
230	EX_UNWCMD	Unknown command.

(continued)

Return Value	Command Error	Error Message
231	EX_ESTMON	RM monitoring has stopped.
232	EX_EWSLTO	Local host timeout error.
233	EX_EWSTOT	Timeout error.
234	EX_EWSUSE	Pairsplit –E.
235	EX_EVOLCE	Pair volume combination error.
236	EX_ENQVOL	Group volume matching error occurred.
237	EX_CMDIOE	Command I/O error.
238	EX_UNWCOD	Unknown function code.
239	EX_ENOGRP	Specified group is not defined.
240	EX_INVCMD	Invalid disk array command.
241	EX_INVMOD	Invalid disk array command.
242	EX_ENORMT	No available remote host.
243	EX_ENAMLG	Specified file name is too long.
244	EX_ERANGE	Resulting value is too large.
245	EX_ENOMEM	Insufficient memory.
246	EX_ENODEV	Specified device does not exist.
247	EX_ENOENT	Specified group or device does not exist.
248	EX_OPTINV	Specified option is invalid.
249	EX_INVNAM	Specified name is invalid.
250	EX_ATTDBG	Cannot attached to a Debug layer.
251	EX_ATTHOR	RM software error.
252	EX_UNWOPT	Unknown option.
253	EX_INVARG	Invalid argument.
254	EX_REQARG	Required argument list is not specified.

(continued)

Return Value	Command Error	Error Message
255	EX_COMERR	Cannot communicate with RM.
256	EX_ENOSUP	SVOL denied due to disabling
257	EX_EPRORT	Mode changes denied due to retention time.

Command errors

Command Error	Problem	Action
EX_ATTDBG	This command failed to communicate with RM, or a log directory file could not be created.	Verify that RM is functioning properly.
EX_ATTHOR	Connection could not be made with RM.	Verify that RM has started and that the correct **HORCMINST** value has been defined.
EX_CMDIOE	The request to the command device either failed or was rejected.	Check to see whether the syslog file of the host reports an Illegal Request (0x05) Sense Key, if so, then verify: • The BC/CA functions are installed on the disk array; • The ESCON RCP and LCP ports are set properly; • The CU paths have been established; • The target volume is available.
EX_CMDRJE	The request to the command device either failed or was rejected.	Verify the following: • The BC/CA functions are installed on the disk array. • The ESCON RCP and LCP ports are set properly. • The CU paths have been established. • The target volume is available.
EX_COMERR	This command failed to communicate with RM.	Verify that RM is running.
EX_ENAMLG	Undefined error.	Call the HP support center.

(continued)

Command Error	Problem	Action
EX_ENLDEV	A device defined in the configuration file does not have an assigned LUN, port, or target ID.	Verify that the configuration file is correct and that all devices are defined correctly.
EX_ENOCTG	Not enough CT groups. Could not register because 15 CTs (XP256), 63 CTs (XP512), 127 CTs (XP1024), or 255 CTs (XP12000) are already in use.	Decrease the number of CTs in use, or use the **pairvolchk** command to display the CTs in use; then use **paircreate** with **–f async** *CTGID* or **-mgrp** *CTGID* to specifically assign new pairs to existing CTs.
EX_ENODEV	The designated device name does not exist in the configuration file.	Verify the device name and add it to the configuration file of the remote and local hosts.
EX_ENOENT	The designated device or group name does not exist in the configuration file.	Verify the device or group name and add it to the configuration file of the remote and local hosts.
EX_ENOGRP	The designated device or group name does not exist in the configuration file, or the network address for remote communication does not exist for the specified group name.	Verify the device or group name and add it to the configuration file of the remote and local hosts.
EX_ENOMEM	Insufficient memory.	Increase the virtual memory of the system, or close any unnecessary programs.
EX_ENORMT	A timeout error occurred.	Verify that the local and remote servers are properly communicating, and increase the timeout value in the configuration file.
EX_ENOSUP	S-VOL error	Verify the microcode version by using the **raidqry -l** command
EX_ENOUNT	The disk array unitID that was designated as a command argument does not exist in the configuration file.	Verify the disk array unitID and add it to the HORCM_CMD section of the local host configuration file.

(continued)

Command Error	Problem	Action
EX_ENPERM	A device mentioned in the configuration file does not have permission for a pair operation.	Use the **pairdisplay** or **raidscan –find verify** command to confirm that a pair operation is permitted for the device.
EX_ENQCTG	The CT group in a group does not match the CTGID number.	Confirm the CTGID by using the **pairvolchk** command.
EX_ENQSER	The group that was designated by **paircreate** (for BC) does not have the same disk array unit, or the unitID is not identical to the unitID of the same serial# of the disk array.	Confirm the serial# by using the **pairdisplay** or the **raidqry –r** command.
EX_ENQSIZ	Unmatched pairing volume size.	Use the **raidscan -f** command to confirm the volume size or number of the LUSE volume, and change the SIZE of the volumes to match.
EX_ENQVOL	The attributes or the fence level of the primary and secondary volumes do not match.	Confirm the attributes and fence level settings using the **pairdisplay** command and reset the volume attributes and fence levels.
EX_ENXCTG	An available CT group for an Open Systems volume does not exist for asynchronous CA or BC.	Confirm whether all CT groups are already used by other volumes.
EX_EPRORT	Mode changes denied due to retention time	Verify the rentention time for a target volume using the **raidvchkscan -v gflag** command.
EX_ERANGE	The argument or the result of the argument exceeds the maximum command value.	Re-issue the command, making sure to correctly define all of the command arguments.
EX_ERPERM	RAID permission denied.	Use the **inqraid -CLI** and **raidqry -h** commands to confirm the type of RAID permitted for RM.

(continued)

Command Error	Problem	Action
EX_ESTMON	RM monitoring is prohibited.	Verify the poll value defined in the configuration file.
EX_EVOLCE	The chosen primary and secondary volumes cannot be paired.	Confirm the status of each volume using the **pairdisplay** command.
EX_EWSLTO	The command timed out because the remote host did not respond.	Verify that the remote server is functioning properly.
EX_EWSTOT	The command has timed out.	Change the timeout value and re-issue the command.
EX_ENOMEM	Insufficient memory.	Increase the virtual memory of the system, or close any unnecessary programs.
EX_EWSUSE	A paired volume has failed and become suspended.	Issue the **pairresync** command to try to recover the failed pair. If the **pairresync** command does not restore the pair, call the HP support center.
EX_EXTCTG	A CA volume is defined in the configuration file **HORCM_CONF** as a group extended across disk arrays.	Confirm serial number or unit ID of the volumes by using the **pairdisplay** command.
EX_INCSTG	The status of a volume in the group is not consistent with the pair status.	Verify the pair status using the **pairdisplay** command.
EX_INVARG	An option or arguments of the command is incorrect.	Reissue the command, making sure to correctly define all of the command arguments.
EX_INVCMD	Disk array error.	Call the HP support center.
EX_INVMOD	Disk array error.	Call the HP support center.
EX_INVMUN	An invalid MU number has been defined.	Confirm the MU number of the specified group using the **pairdisplay** command.
EX_INVNAM	An invalid name is defined in the command argument.	Reissue the command, making sure to correctly define all of the command arguments.

(continued)

Command Error	Problem	Action
EX_INVRCD	Incorrect return code.	Call the HP support center.
EX_INVSTP	The target volume is not accessible because of an invalid volume status.	Verify the volume status using the **pairdisplay** command.
EX_INVVOL	The target volume is not accessible because of an invalid volume status.	Verify the volume status using the **pairdisplay** command.
EX_OPTINV	Disk array error.	Call the HP support center.
EX_REQARG	All the necessary command arguments have not been provided.	Reissue the command, making sure to define all of the command arguments.
EX_UNWCMD	An unknown command has been defined.	Verify the command name and re-issue the command.
EX_UNWCOD	Disk array reporting error.	Call the HP support center.
EX_UNWERR	Undefined error.	Call the HP support center.
EX_UNWOPT	An unknown option has been defined.	Reissue the command, making sure to use only defined command arguments.
EX_VOLCRE	Swap-takeover volume specification error.	Verify the pair status using the **pairdisplay** command.
EX_VOLCUE	S-VOL specification error.	Verify the pair status using the **pairdisplay** command.
EX_VOLCUR	The currency of the S-VOL data cannot be verified.	Verify the pair status using the **pairdisplay** command.

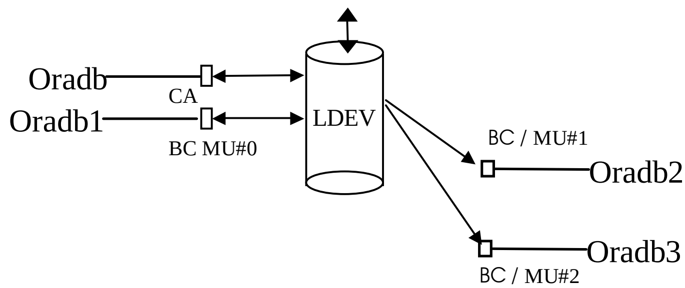
A

Configuration file examples

This appendix presents examples of RM configuration files.

Configuration definition for cascading volumes

RAID Manager is capable of keeping track of up to four MU pair associations per LDEV (one for CA, three for BC). The following figure shows this configuration.



Correspondence between a configuration file and mirror descriptors

The following table shows how MU usage can indicate that a pair is CA, BC, or either.

Leaving MU blank means “0, and usable for either a CA or BC pair.” An explicit **0** (or **1** or **2**) means BC only.

HORCM_DEV entries can be in random order.

No	MU designations in configuration file	MU#0		BC only	
		CA	BC	MU#1	MU#2
1	HORCM_DEV #dev_group dev_name port# TargetID LU# **MU#** Oradb oradev1 CL1-D 2 1	oradev1	oradev1		
2	HORCM_DEV #dev_group dev_name port# TargetID LU# **MU#** Oradb oradev1 CL1-D 2 **1** Oradb1 oradev11 CL1-D 2 1 **1** Oradb2 oradev21 CL1-D 2 1 **2**	oradev1	oradev1	oradev11	oradev21
3	HORCM_DEV #dev_group dev_name port# TargetID LU# **MU#** Oradb oradev1 CL1-D 2 **1** Oradb1 oradev11 CL1-D 2 1 **0** Oradb2 oradev21 CL1-D 2 1 **1** Oradb3 oradev31 CL1-D 2 1 **2**	oradev1	oradev11	oradev21	oradev31
4	HORCM_DEV #dev_group dev_name port# TargetID LU# **MU#** Oradb oradev1 CL1-D 2 1 **0**		oradev1		
5	HORCM_DEV #dev_group dev_name port# TargetID LU# **MU#** Oradb oradev1 CL1-D 2 1 **0** Oradb1 oradev11 CL1-D 2 1 **1** Oradb2 oradev21 CL1-D 2 1 **2**		oradev1	oradev11	oradev21

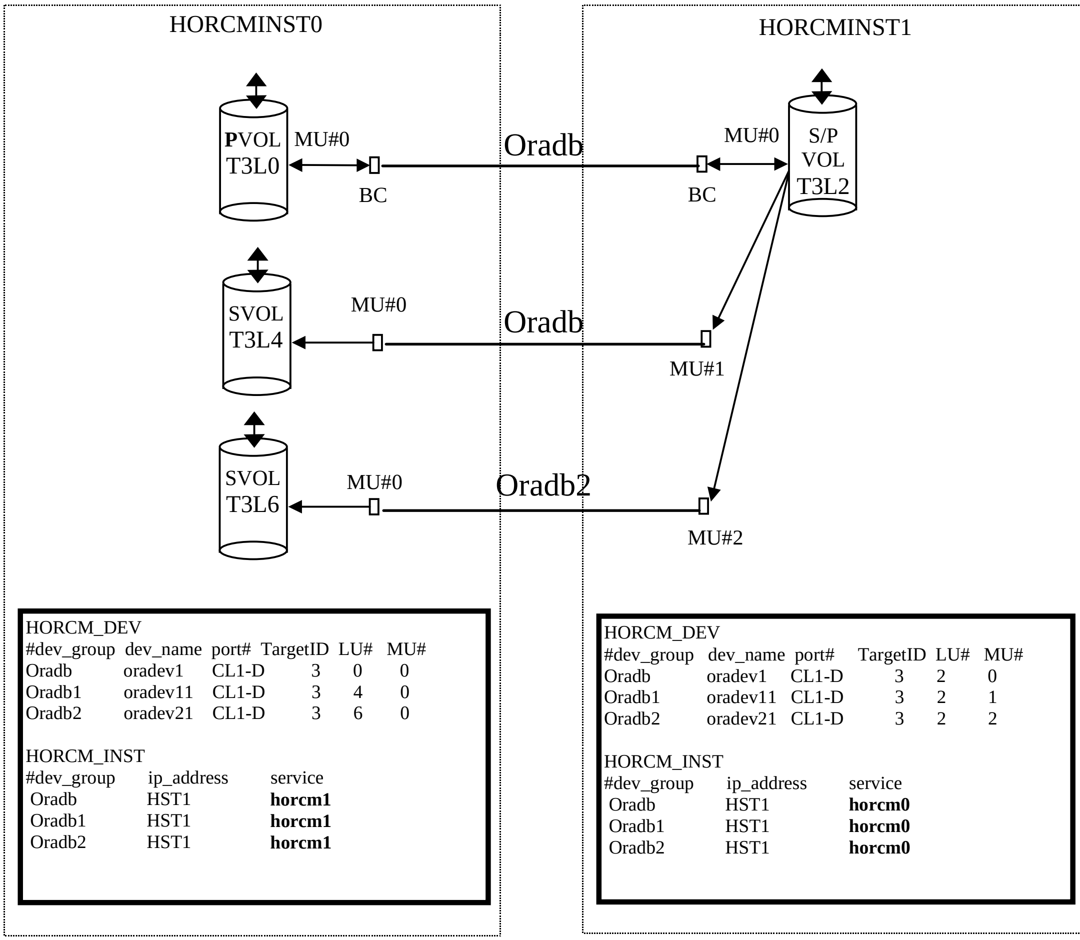
Cascading connection configuration files

The following are examples of configuration files and the corresponding (**pairdisplay**) outputs.

Cascading BC

You should use two configuration files to describe a cascaded (tiered) BC configuration, as shown in the preceding figure.

Instance 0, in this case, describes the root (and all leaf) volumes (as if the normal diagram had been folded over from right to left). Instance 1 describes the intermediate S-VOL/P-VOLs.



The instance 0 configuration file in the figure above specifies that:

- Three BC pairs are recognized.
- None of the BC pairs are an intermediate S-VOL/P-VOLs in a cascade, because each has a different TID/LUN combination, with an explicit MU# of 0.

The instance 1 configuration file in the preceding figure specifies that:

- Three BC pairs are recognized.
- The BC pairs are intermediate S-VOL/P-VOLs, because the TID/LUN combinations are all the same.

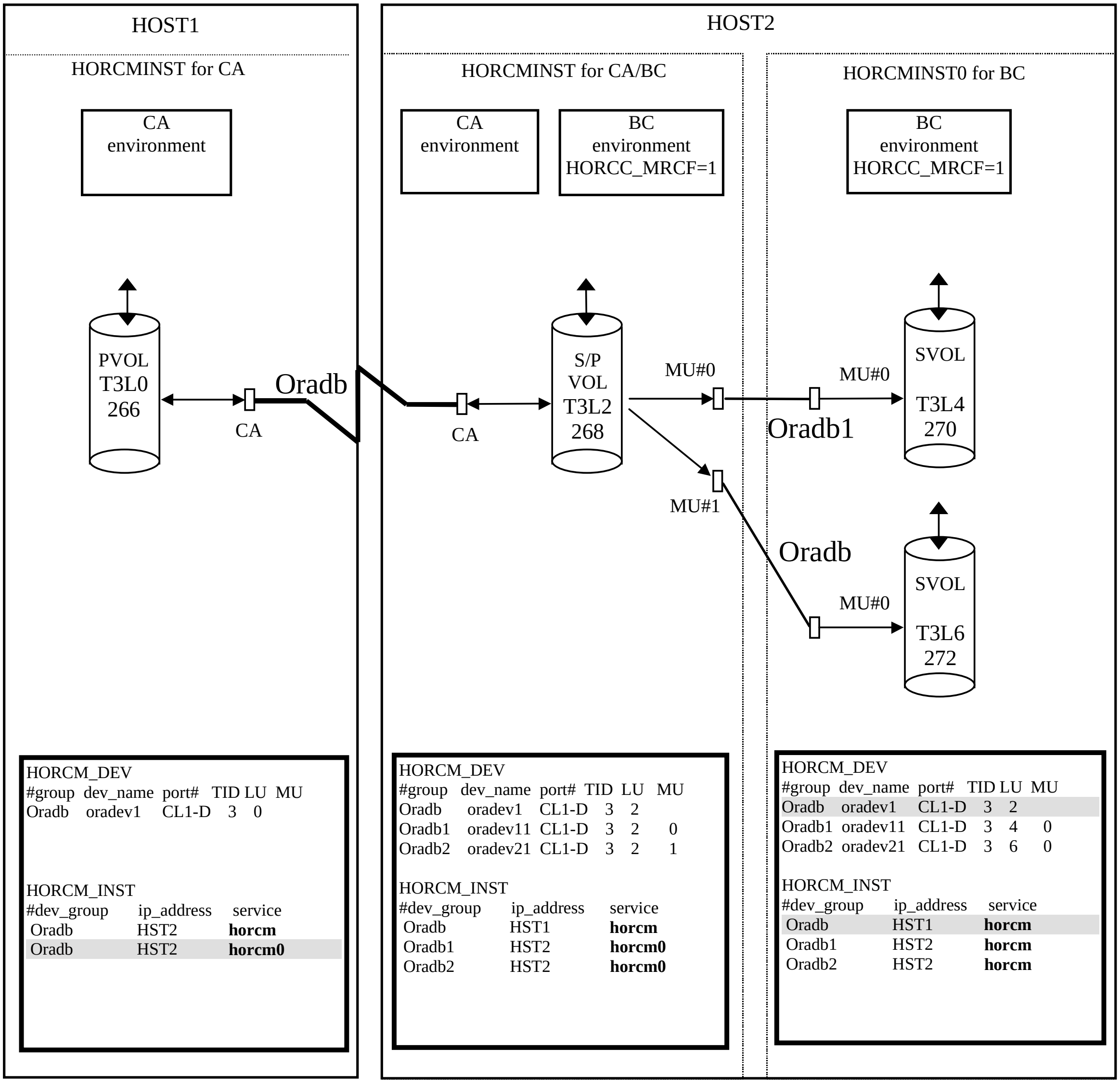
Connecting CA and BC

You can use three configuration files to describe a CA/BC cascaded configuration, as shown in the following figure.

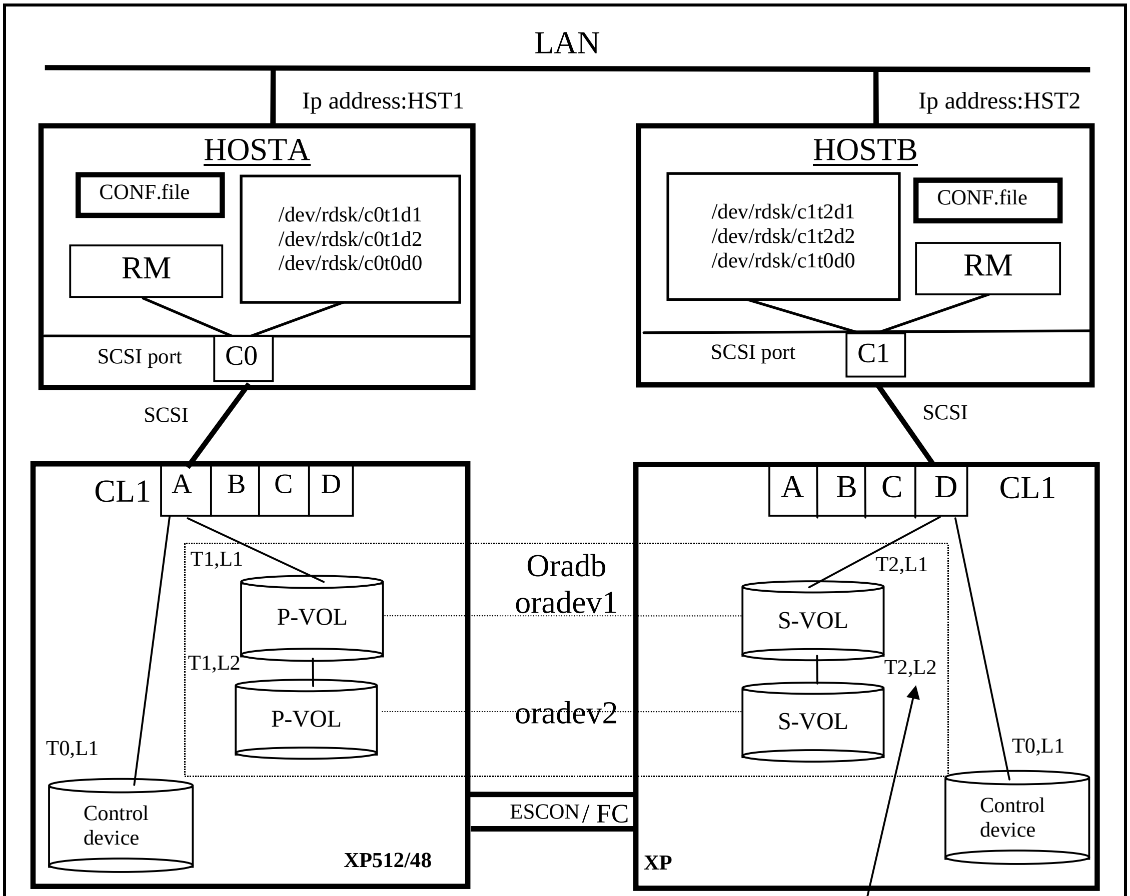
The configuration file in the center (HORCMINST for CA/BC) can be interpreted as follows:

- The first line is ambiguous as to whether the pair is CA or BC because the MU# is blank.
- The second line shows that the MU# is 0, meaning BC. The Port/TID/LUN is the same as on the first line, so you know that the top line refers to a CA pair.
- Since all three lines use the same Port/TID/LUN, you know that the pair is the intermediate part of a CA, cascaded BC configuration.

Another hint that **oradb** is a CA pair is that its remote pair serving host is a host other than HOST2, which serves this RM instance.


HOST1
HORCMINST for CA
CA environment
PVOL
T3L0
266
CA
Oradb
HOST2
HORCMINST for CA/BC
CA environment
BC environment HORCC_MRCF=1
S/P VOL
T3L2
268
CA
MU#0
MU#1
HORCMINST0 for BC
BC environment HORCC_MRCF=1
MU#0
SVOL
T3L4
270
Oradb1
Oradb
MU#0
SVOL
T3L6
272
HORCM_DEV
#group dev_name port# TID LU MU
Oradb oradev1 CL1-D 3 0
HORCM_INST
#dev_group ip_address service
Oradb HST2 horcm
Oradb HST2 horcm0
HORCM_DEV
#group dev_name port# TID LU MU
Oradb oradev1 CL1-D 3 2
Oradb1 oradev11 CL1-D 3 2 0
Oradb2 oradev21 CL1-D 3 2 1
HORCM_INST
#dev_group ip_address service
Oradb HST1 horcm
Oradb1 HST2 horcm0
Oradb2 HST2 horcm0
HORCM_DEV
#group dev_name port# TID LU MU
Oradb oradev1 CL1-D 3 2
Oradb1 oradev11 CL1-D 3 4 0
Oradb2 oradev21 CL1-D 3 6 0
HORCM_INST
#dev_group ip_address service
Oradb HST1 horcm
Oradb1 HST2 horcm
Oradb2 HST2 horcm

CA configuration (remote CA, two hosts)



Note: Control device not available to user (ESCON/FC path and control device established from SVP)

Explanation of terms:
T*x*: targetID
L*x*: LUN

Configuration file for HOSTA (/etc/horcm.conf) on page 263

```
HORCM_MON
#ip_address    service    poll(10ms)     timeout(10ms)
HST1            horcm      1000               3000

HORCM_CMD
#dev_name
/dev/xxx
```

(See "Note" on page 264)

```
HORCM_DEV
#dev_group      dev_name     port#     TargetID  LU#
Oradb           oradev1      CL1-A         1      1
Oradb           oradev2      CL1-A         1      2

HORCM_INST
#dev_group       ip_address         service
Oradb               HST2             horcm
```

Configuration file for HOSTB (/etc/horcm.conf) on page 263

```
HORCM_MON
#ip_address    service    poll(10ms)      timeout(10ms)
HST2            horcm       1000               3000

HORCM_CMD
#dev_name
/dev/xxx
```

(See "Note" on page 264)

```
HORCM_DEV
#dev_group      dev_name     port#     TargetID  LU#
Oradb           oradev1      CL1-D         2      1
Oradb           oradev2      CL1-D         2      2

HORCM_INST
#dev_group       ip_address         service
Oradb               HST1             horcm
```

Note

There must be at least one command device described in the configuration definition for every instance. Up to 16 instances can use the same command device via the same port. Instances beyond 16 must use a different SCSI path.

The following shows an example of the (raw) control device file format that must be used. HOST*x* = HOSTA, HOSTB, etc...

- HP-UX
  HORCM_CMD for HOST*x* ... **/dev/rdsk/c0t0d1**
- Solaris
  HORCM_CMD for HOST*x* ... **/dev/rdsk/c0t0d1s2**
- AIX
  HORCM_CMD for HOST*x* ... **/dev/rhdisk*NN***

  Where *NN* is the device number assigned automatically by AIX.
- Digital UNIX
  HORCM_CMD for HOST*x* ... **/dev/rrzb*NN*c**
  Where *NN* is device number (BUS number × 8 + target ID) defined by Digital UNIX.
- DYNIX/ptx
  HORCM_CMD for HOST*x* ... **/dev/rdsk/sd*NN***
  Where *NN* is the device number assigned automatically by DYNIX/ptx.
- Windows NT/2000/2003
  HORCM_CMD for HOST*x* ... **.\PhysicalDrive*N***
  Where *N* is the device number assigned automatically by Windows NT/2000/2003.
- Linux, xLinux
  HORCM_CMD for HOST*x* ... **/dev/sd*N***
  Where *N* is the device number assigned automatically by Linux/xLinux.

CA (remote CA, two host) command examples

Commands from HOSTA in the figure on page 263

The following examples employ CA commands from HOSTA.

- Designate a group name (**Oradb**) and a local host P-VOL:

  `# paircreate -g Oradb -f never -vl`

  This command begins a pair coupling between the volumes designated as **Oradb** in the configuration definition file and begins copying the two pairs (in the example configuration).

- Designate a volume name (**oradev1**) and a local host P-VOL:

  `# paircreate -g Oradb -d oradev1 -f never -vl`

  This command begins a pair coupling between the volumes designated as oradev1 in the configuration definition file.

  In the example configuration, this pairs **CL1-A, T1, L1** and **CL1-D, T2, L1**

- Designate a group name and confirm pair volume state:

```
#  pairdisplay  -g Oradb
Group PairVol(L/R) (P,T#,L#),   Seq#,  LDEV#..P/S,  Status, Fence, Seq#,  P-LDEV# M
oradb oradev1(L)   (CL1-A, 1,1) 30053  18    ..P-VOL  COPY   NEVER, 30054   19     -
oradb oradev1(R)   (CL1-D, 2,1) 30054  19    ..S-VOL  COPY   NEVER, -----   18     -
oradb oradev2(L)   (CL1-A, 1,2) 30053  20    ..P-VOL  COPY   NEVER, 30054   21     -
oradb oradev2(R)   (CL1-D, 2,2) 30054  21    ..S-VOL  COPY   NEVER, -----   20     -
```

Commands from HOSTB in the figure on page 263

The following examples employ CA commands from HOSTB.

- Designate a group name and a remote host P-VOL:

  ```
  #  paircreate  -g Oradb  -f never  -vr
  ```

  This command begins a pair coupling between the volumes designated as **Oradb** in the configuration definition file and begins copying the two pairs (in the example configuration).

- Designate a volume name (**oradev1**) and a remote host P-VOL:

  ```
  # paircreate  -g Oradb  -d oradev1  -f never -vr
  ```

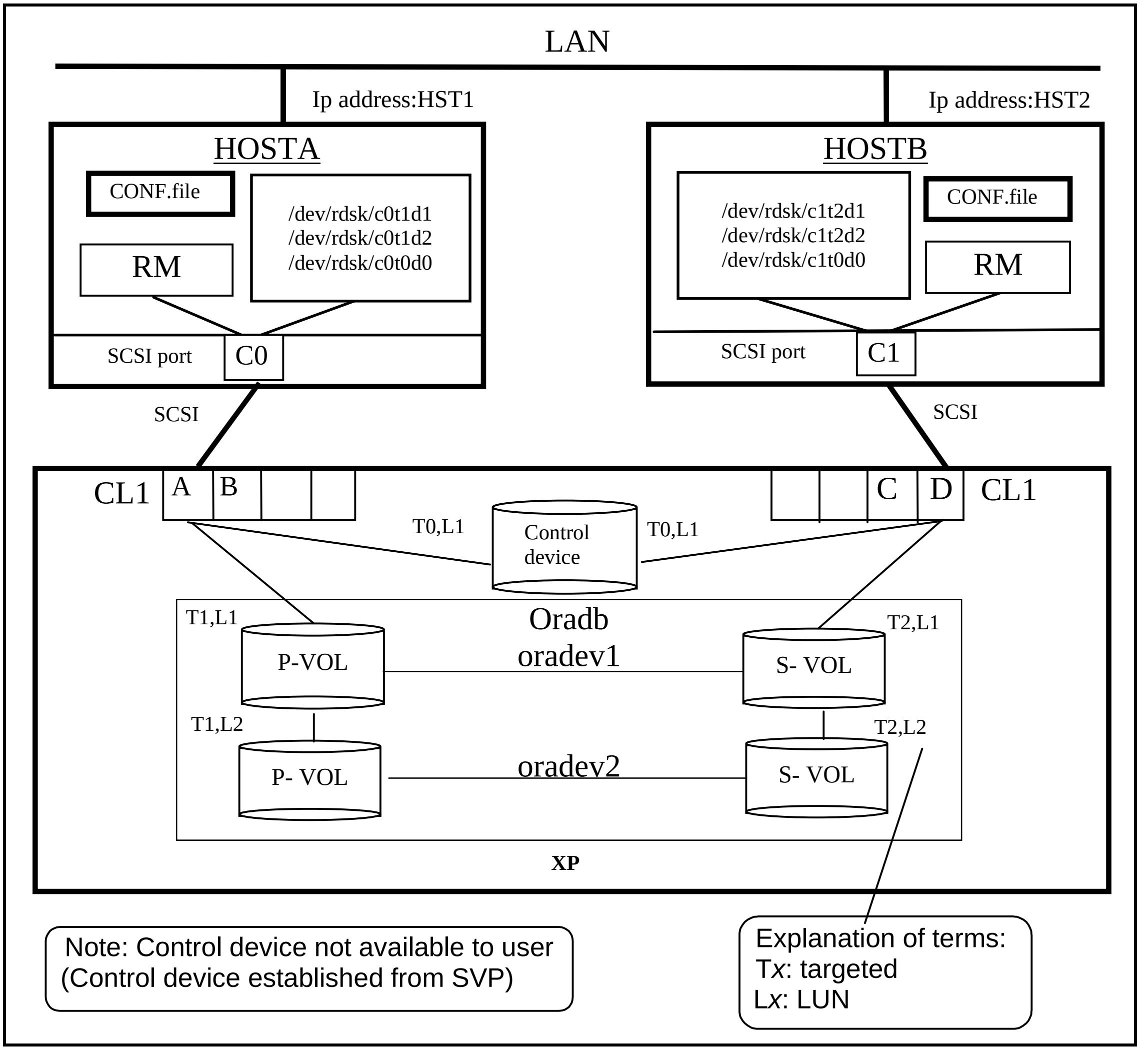
  This command begins a pair coupling between the volumes designated as **oradev1** in the configuration definition file.

  In the example configuration, this pairs **CL1-A, T1, L1** and **CL1-D, T2, L1**

- Designate a group name and confirm pair volume state:

```
#  pairdisplay  -g Oradb
Group PairVol(L/R) (P,T#,L#),   Seq#,  LDEV#..P/S,  Status, Fence, Seq#,  P-LDEV# M
oradb oradev1(L)   (CL1-D, 2,1) 30054  19    ..S-VOL  COPY   NEVER, -----   18     -
oradb oradev1(R)   (CL1-A, 1,1) 30053  18    ..P-VOL  COPY   NEVER, 30054   19     -
oradb oradev2(L)   (CL1-D, 2,2) 30054  21    ..S-VOL  COPY   NEVER, -----   20     -
oradb oradev2(R)   (CL1-A, 1,2) 30053  20    ..P-VOL  COPY   NEVER, 30054   21     -
```

CA configuration (local loopback, two hosts)



Configuration file for HOSTA on page 268 (/etc/horcm.conf)

```
HORCM_MON
#ip_address   service    poll(10ms)     timeout(10ms)
HST1           horcm      1000               3000

HORCM_CMD
#dev_name
/dev/xxx
```

(See “Note” on page 264)

```
HORCM_DEV
#dev_group      dev_name      port#      TargetID  LU#
Oradb           oradev1       CL1-A          1       1
Oradb           oradev2       CL1-A          1       2

HORCM_INST
#dev_group        ip_address          service
Oradb                HST2               horcm
```

Configuration file for HOSTB on page 268 (/etc/horcm.conf)

```
HORCM_MON
#ip_address   service    poll(10ms)      timeout(10ms)
HST2           horcm       1000               3000

HORCM_CMD
#dev_name
/dev/xxx
```

(See “Note” on page 264)

```
HORCM_DEV
#dev_group      dev_name      port#      TargetID  LU#
Oradb           oradev1       CL1-D          2       1
Oradb           oradev2       CL1-D          2       2

HORCM_INST
#dev_group        ip_address          service
Oradb                HST1               horcm
```

CA (local loopback, two hosts) command examples

Commands from HOSTA in the figure on page 268

The following examples employ RM commands from HOSTA.

- Designate a group name (**Oradb**) and a local host P-VOL:

  `# paircreate -g Oradb -f never -vl`

  This command begins a pair coupling between the volumes designated as **Oradb** in the configuration definition file and begins copying the two pairs (in the example configuration).

- Designate a volume name (**oradev1**) and a local host P-VOL:

  `# paircreate -g Oradb -d oradev1 -f never -vl`

  This command begins a pair coupling between the volumes designated as oradev1 in the configuration definition file.

  In the example configuration, this pairs **CL1-A, T1, L1** and **CL1-D, T2, L1**

- Designate a group name and confirm pair volume state:

```
#  pairdisplay  -g Oradb
Group PairVol(L/R) (P,T#,L#),   Seq#,  LDEV#..P/S,  Status, Fence, Seq#,  P-LDEV# M
oradb oradev1(L)   (CL1-A, 1,1) 30053  18    ..P-VOL  COPY   NEVER, 30053   19     -
oradb oradev1(R)   (CL1-D, 2,1) 30053  19    ..S-VOL  COPY   NEVER, -----   18     -
oradb oradev2(L)   (CL1-A, 1,2) 30053  20    ..P-VOL  COPY   NEVER, 30053   21     -
oradb oradev2(R)   (CL1-D, 2,2) 30053  21    ..S-VOL  COPY   NEVER, -----   20     -
```

Commands from HOSTB in the figure on page 268

The following examples employ RM commands from HOSTB.

- Designate a group name and a remote host P-VOL:

  `#  paircreate  -g Oradb  -f never  -vr`

  This command begins a pair coupling between the volumes designated as **Oradb** in the configuration definition file and begins copying the two pairs (in the example configuration).

- Designate a volume name (**oradev1**) and a remote host P-VOL:

  `# paircreate  -g Oradb  -d oradev1  -f never -vr`

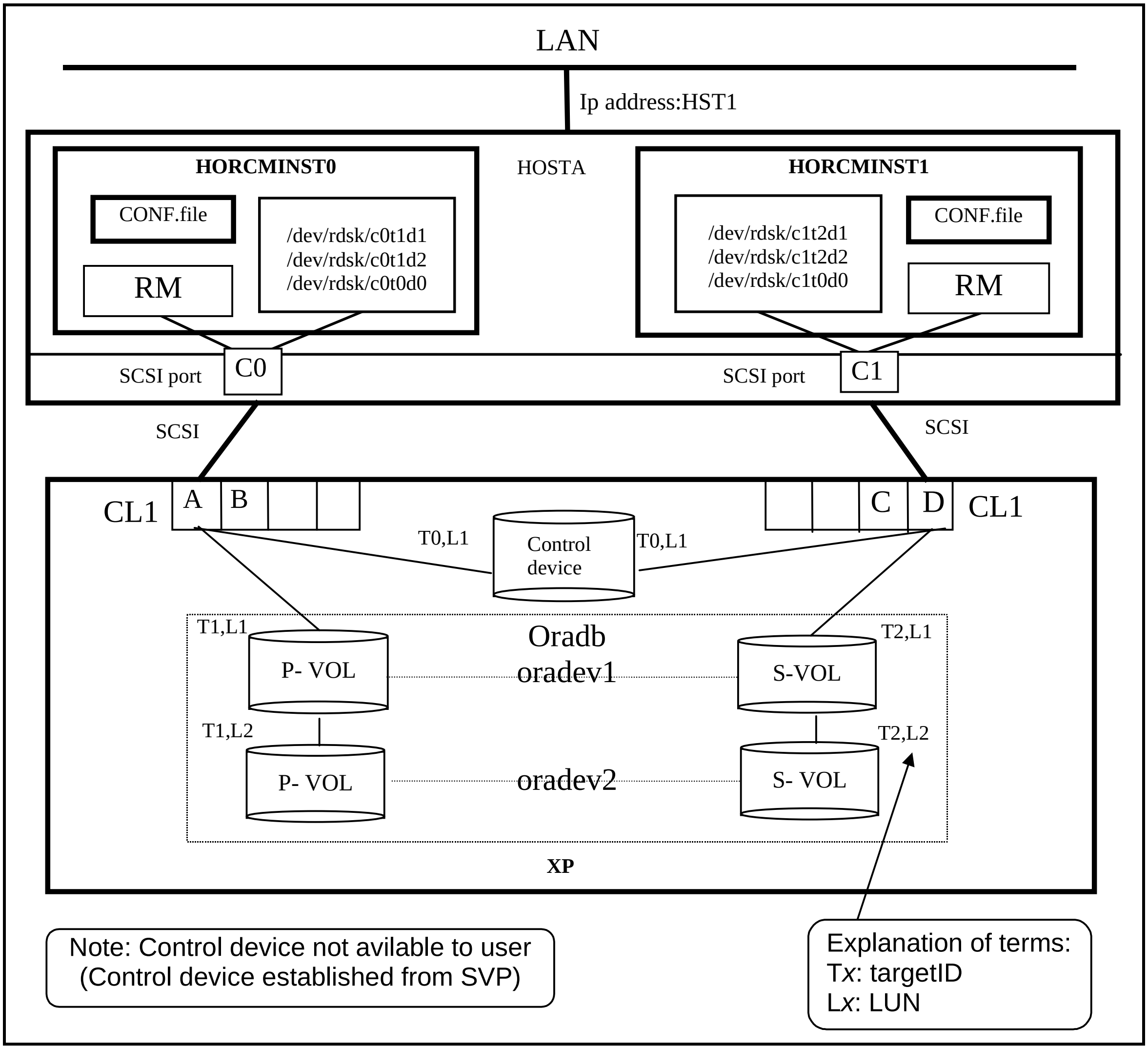
  This command begins a pair coupling between the volumes designated as **oradev1** in the configuration definition file.

  In the example configuration, this pairs **CL1-A, T1, L1** and **CL1-D, T2, L1**

- Designate a group name and confirm pair volume state:

```
#  pairdisplay  -g Oradb
Group PairVol(L/R) (P,T#,L#),   Seq#,  LDEV#..P/S,  Status, Fence, Seq#,  P-LDEV# M
oradb oradev1(L)   (CL1-D, 2,1) 30053  19..   S-VOL  COPY   NEVER, -----   18     -
oradb oradev1(R)   (CL1-A, 1,1) 30053  18..   P-VOL  COPY   NEVER, 30053   19     -
oradb oradev2(L)   (CL1-D, 2,2) 30053  21..   S-VOL  COPY   NEVER, -----   20     -
oradb oradev2(R)   (CL1-A, 1,2) 30053  20..   P-VOL  COPY   NEVER, 30053   21     -
```

CA configuration (two RM instances, one host)



Configuration file for HOSTA, Instance 0 shown on page 272 (/etc/horcm0.conf)

```
HORCM_MON
#ip_address     service     poll(10ms)     timeout(10ms)
HST1            horcm0       1000               3000

HORCM_CMD
#dev_name
/dev/xxx    (See "Note" on page 264)

HORCM_DEV
#dev_group       dev_name      port#      TargetID  LU#
Oradb            oradev1       CL1-A          1       1
Oradb            oradev2       CL1-A          1       2

HORCM_INST
#dev_group         ip_address           service
Oradb                 HST1               horcm1
```

Configuration file for HOSTA, Instance 1 shown on page 272 (/etc/horcm1.conf)

```
HORCM_MON
#ip_address     service     poll(10ms)     timeout(10ms)
HST1            horcm1       1000               3000

HORCM_CMD
#dev_name
/dev/xxx    (See "Note" on page 264)

HORCM_DEV
#dev_group       dev_name      port#      TargetID  LU#
Oradb            oradev1       CL1-D          2       1
Oradb            oradev2       CL1-D          2       2

HORCM_INST
#dev_group         ip_address           service
Oradb                 HST1               horcm0
```

CA (two RM instances, one host) command examples

Commands from HOSTA, Instance 0 in the figure on page 272

The following examples employ RM commands from HOSTA, Instance 0.

- Set the instance number. (If C shell)

  # setenv HORCMINST 0

  (*Windows NT/2000/2003*) **set HORCMINST=0**

- Designate a group name (**Oradb**) and a local instance P-VOL:

  # paircreate -g Oradb -f never -vl

  This command begins a pair coupling between the two pairs of volumes designated as **Oradb** in the configuration definition file.

- Designate a volume name (**oradev1**) and a local instance P-VOL:

  # paircreate -g Oradb -d oradev1 -f never -vl

  In the example configuration, this pairs **CL1-A, T1, L1** and **CL1-D, T2, L1**

- Designate a group name and confirm pair volume state:

```
#  pairdisplay  -g Oradb
Group PairVol(L/R) (P,T#,L#),   Seq#,  LDEV#..P/S,  Status, Fence, Seq#,  P-LDEV# M
oradb oradev1(L)   (CL1-A, 1,1) 30053  18    ..P-VOL  COPY   NEVER, 30053   19     -
oradb oradev1(R)   (CL1-D, 2,1) 30053  19    ..S-VOL  COPY   NEVER, -----   18     -
oradb oradev2(L)   (CL1-A, 1,2) 30053  20    ..P-VOL  COPY   NEVER, 30053   21     -
oradb oradev2(R)   (CL1-D, 2,2) 30053  21    ..S-VOL  COPY   NEVER, -----   20     -
```

Commands from HOSTA, Instance 1 in the figure on page 272

The following examples employ RM commands from HOSTA, Instance 1.

- Set the instance number. (If C shell)

  # setenv HORCMINST 1

  (*Windows NT/2000/2003*) **set HORCMINST=1**

- Designate a group name and a remote instance P-VOL:

  # paircreate -g Oradb -f never -vr

  This command begins a pair coupling between the two pairs of volumes designated as **Oradb** in the configuration definition file.

- Designate a volume name (**oradev1**) and a remote instance P-VOL:

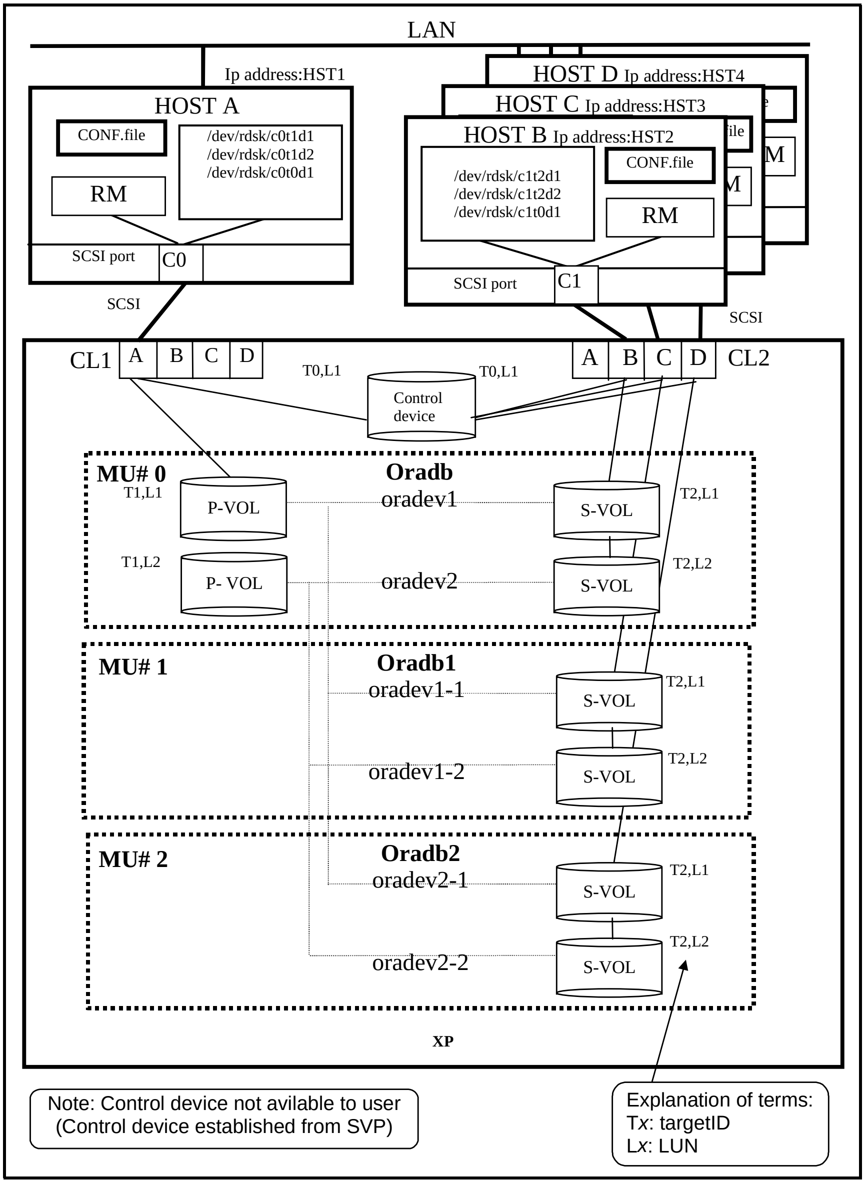
  # paircreate -g Oradb -d oradev1 -f never -vr

  In the example configuration, this pairs **CL1-A, T1, L1** and **CL1-D, T2, L1**

- Designate a group name and confirm pair volume state:

```
# pairdisplay -g Oradb
Group PairVol(L/R) (P,T#,L#),   Seq#,  LDEV#..P/S,  Status, Fence, Seq#,  P-LDEV# M
oradb oradev1(L)   (CL1-D, 2,1) 30053  19    ..S-VOL  COPY   NEVER, -----  18      -
oradb oradev1(R)   (CL1-A, 1,1) 30053  18    ..P-VOL  COPY   NEVER, 30053  19      -
oradb oradev2(L)   (CL1-D, 2,2) 30053  21    ..S-VOL  COPY   NEVER, -----  20      -
oradb oradev2(R)   (CL1-A, 1,2) 30053  20    ..P-VOL  COPY   NEVER, 30053  21      -
```

BC configuration



Configuration file for HOSTA shown on page 276 (/etc/horcm.conf)

```
HORCM_MON
#ip_address     service     poll(10ms)     timeout(10ms)
HST1             horcm       1000               3000

HORCM_CMD
#dev_name
/dev/xxx
```

(See “Note” on page 264)

```
HORCM_DEV
#dev_group       dev_name      port#      TargetID  LU#   MU#
Oradb            oradev1       CL1-A         1       1     0
Oradb            oradev2       CL1-A         1       2     0

Oradb1           oradev1-1     CL1-A         1       1     1
Oradb1           oradev1-2     CL1-A         1       2     1

Oradb2           oradev2-1     CL1-A         1       1     2
Oradb2           oradev2-2     CL1-A         1       2     2

HORCM_INST
#dev_group         ip_address         service
Oradb                 HST2              horcm
Oradb1                HST3              horcm
Oradb2                HST4              horcm
```

Configuration file for HOSTB shown on page 276 (/etc/horcm.conf)

```
HORCM_MON
#ip_address     service     poll(10ms)      timeout(10ms)
HST2             horcm       1000               3000

HORCM_CMD
#dev_name
/dev/xxx
```

(See “Note” on page 264)

```
HORCM_DEV
#dev_group       dev_name      port#      TargetID  LU#   MU#
Oradb            oradev1       CL2-B         2       1
Oradb            oradev2       CL2-B         2       2

HORCM_INST
#dev_group         ip_address         service
Oradb                 HST1              horcm
```

Configuration file for HOSTC shown on page 276 (/etc/horcm.conf)

```
HORCM_MON
#ip_address    service    poll(10ms)     timeout(10ms)
HST3            horcm      1000              3000

HORCM_CMD
#dev_name
/dev/xxx
```

(See “Note” on page 264)

```
HORCM_DEV
#dev_group     dev_name     port#     TargetID  LU#  MU#
Oradb1         oradev1-1    CL2-C        2       1
Oradb1         oradev1-2    CL2-C        2       2

HORCM_INST
#dev_group       ip_address         service
Oradb1              HST1              horcm
```

Configuration file for HOSTD shown on page 276 (/etc/horcm.conf)

```
HORCM_MON
#ip_address    service    poll(10ms)     timeout(10ms)
HST4            horcm     1000              3000

HORCM_CMD
#dev_name
/dev/xxx
```

(See “Note” on page 264)

```
HORCM_DEV
#dev_group     dev_name     port#     TargetID  LU#  MU#
Oradb2         oradev2-1    CL2-D        2       1
Oradb2         oradev2-2    CL2-D        2       2

HORCM_INST
#dev_group       ip_address         service
Oradb2              HST1              horcm
```

BC command examples

Commands from HOSTA shown on page 276 (group Oradb)

- Set the **HORCC_MRCF** environment variable. (If C shell)

  `#  setenv HORCC_MRCF 1`

  (*Windows NT/2000/2003*) **`set HORCC_MRCF=1`**

- Designate a group name (**Oradb**) and a local host P-VOL:

  `#  paircreate  -g Oradb  -vl`

  This command begins a pair coupling between the two pairs of volumes designated as **Oradb** in the configuration definition file.

- Designate a volume name (**oradev1**) and a local host P-VOL:

  `# paircreate  -g Oradb  -d oradev1  -vl`

  In the example configuration, this pairs **CL1-A, T1, L1** and **CL1-B, T2, L1**

- Designate a group name and confirm pair volume state:

```
#  pairdisplay  -g Oradb
Group PairVol(L/R) (Port#,TID,LU-M), Seq#,  LDEV#..P/S,  Status, Seq#,  P-LDEV# M
oradb oradev1(L)   (CL1-A, 1,  1-0)  30053    18..P-VOL  COPY   30053    20    -
oradb oradev1(R)   (CL2-B, 2,  1-0)  30053    20..S-VOL  COPY   -----    18    -
oradb oradev2(L)   (CL1-A, 1,  2-0)  30053    19..P-VOL  COPY   30053    21    -
oradb oradev2(R)   (CL2-B, 2,  2-0)  30053    21..S-VOL  COPY   -----    19    -
```

Commands from HOSTB shown on page 276 (group Oradb)

- Set the **HORCC_MRCF** environment variable. (If C shell)

  # setenv HORCC_MRCF 1

  (*Windows NT/2000/2003*) **set HORCC_MRCF=1**

- Designate a group name and a remote host P-VOL:

  # paircreate -g Oradb -vr

  This command begins a pair coupling between the two pairs of volumes designated as **Oradb** in the configuration definition file.

- Designate a volume name (**oradev1**) and a remote host P-VOL:

  # paircreate -g Oradb -d oradev1 -vr

  In the example configuration, this pairs **CL1-A, T1, L1** and **CL1-B, T2, L1**

- Designate a group name and confirm pair volume state:

```
#  pairdisplay  -g Oradb
Group PairVol(L/R) (Port#,TID,LU-M), Seq#,  LDEV#..P/S,  Status, Seq#,  P-LDEV# M
oradb oradev1(L)   (CL2-B, 2,   1-0)  30053     20..S-VOL  COPY   -----    18    -
oradb oradev1(R)   (CL1-A, 1,   1-0)  30053     18..P-VOL  COPY   30053    20    -
oradb oradev2(L)   (CL2-B, 2,   2-0)  30053     21..S-VOL  COPY   -----    19    -
oradb oradev2(R)   (CL1-A, 1,   2-0)  30053     19..P-VOL  COPY   30053    21    -
```

Commands from HOSTA shown on page 276 (group Oradb1)

- Set the **HORCC_MRCF** environment variable. (If C shell)

  `#  setenv HORCC_MRCF 1`

  (*Windows NT/2000/2003*) **`set HORCC_MRCF=1`**

- Designate a group name (**Oradb1**) and a local host P-VOL:

  `#  paircreate  -g Oradb1  -vl`

  This command begins a pair coupling between the two pairs of volumes designated as **Oradb1** in the configuration definition file.

- Designate a volume name (**oradev1-1**) and a local host P-VOL:

  `# paircreate  -g Oradb1  -d oradev1-1  -vl`

  In the example configuration, this pairs **CL1-A, T1, L1** and **CL2-C, T2, L1**

- Designate a group name and confirm pair volume state:

```
#  pairdisplay  -g Oradb1
Group PairVol(L/R) (Port#,TID,LU-M), Seq#,  LDEV#..P/S,  Status, Seq#,  P-LDEV# M
oradb oradev1-1(L) (CL1-A, 1,  1-1)  30053    18..P-VOL  COPY   30053    22    -
oradb oradev1-1(R) (CL2-C, 2,  1-0)  30053    22..S-VOL  COPY   -----    18    -
oradb oradev2-2(L) (CL1-A, 1,  2-1)  30053    19..P-VOL  COPY   30053    23    -
oradb oradev2-2(R) (CL2-C, 2,  2-0)  30053    23..S-VOL  COPY   -----    19    -
```

Commands from HOSTC shown on page 276 (group Oradb1)

- Set the **HORCC_MRCF** environment variable. (If C shell)

  `# setenv HORCC_MRCF 1`

  (Windows NT/2000/2003) **`set HORCC_MRCF=1`**

- Designate a group name and a remote host P-VOL:

  `# paircreate -g Oradb1 -vr`

  This command begins a pair coupling between the two pairs of volumes designated as **Oradb1** in the configuration definition file.

- Designate a volume name (**oradev1-1**) and a remote host P-VOL:

  `# paircreate -g Oradb1 -d oradev1-1 -vr`

  In the example configuration, this pairs **CL1-A, T1, L1** and **CL2-C, T2, L1**

- Designate a group name and confirm pair volume state:

```
#  pairdisplay  -g Oradb1
Group PairVol(L/R) (Port#,TID,LU-M), Seq#,  LDEV#..P/S,  Status, Seq#,  P-LDEV# M
oradb oradev1-1(L) (CL2-C, 2,  1-0)  30053    22..S-VOL  COPY   -----   18    -
oradb oradev1-1(R) (CL1-A, 1,  1-1)  30053    18..P-VOL  COPY   30053   22    -
oradb oradev1-2(L) (CL2-C, 2,  2-0)  30053    23..S-VOL  COPY   -----   19    -
oradb oradev1-2(R) (CL1-A, 1,  2-1)  30053    19..P-VOL  COPY   30053   23    -
```

Commands from HOSTA shown on page 276 (group Oradb2)

- Set the **HORCC_MRCF** environment variable. (If C shell)

  `# setenv HORCC_MRCF 1`

  (Windows NT/2000/2003) **`set HORCC_MRCF=1`**

- Designate a group name (**Oradb2**) and a local host P-VOL:

  `# paircreate -g Oradb1 -vl`

  This command begins a pair coupling between the two pairs of volumes designated as **Oradb2** in the configuration definition file.

- Designate a volume name (**oradev2-1**) and a local host P-VOL:

  `# paircreate -g Oradb2 -d oradev2-1 -vl`

  In the example configuration, this pairs **CL1-A, T1, L1** and **CL2-D, T2, L1**

- Designate a group name and confirm pair volume state:

```
# pairdisplay -g Oradb2
Group PairVol(L/R) (Port#,TID,LU-M), Seq#,  LDEV#..P/S,  Status, Seq#,  P-LDEV# M
oradb oradev2-1(L) (CL1-A, 1,  1-2)  30053    18..P-VOL  COPY   30053    24    -
oradb oradev2-1(R) (CL2-D, 2,  1-0)  30053    24..S-VOL  COPY   -----    18    -
oradb oradev2-2(L) (CL1-A, 1,  2-2)  30053    19..P-VOL  COPY   30053    25    -
oradb oradev2-2(R) (CL2-D, 2,  2-0)  30053    25..S-VOL  COPY   -----    19    -
```

Commands from HOSTD shown on page 276 (group Oradb2)

- Set the **HORCC_MRCF** environment variable. (If C shell)

  `#  setenv HORCC_MRCF  1`

  (Windows NT/2000/2003) **`set  HORCC_MRCF=1`**

- Designate a group name and a remote host P-VOL:

  `#  paircreate  -g Oradb2  -vr`

  This command begins a pair coupling between the two pairs of volumes designated as **Oradb2** in the configuration definition file.

- Designate a volume name (**oradev2-1**) and a remote host P-VOL:

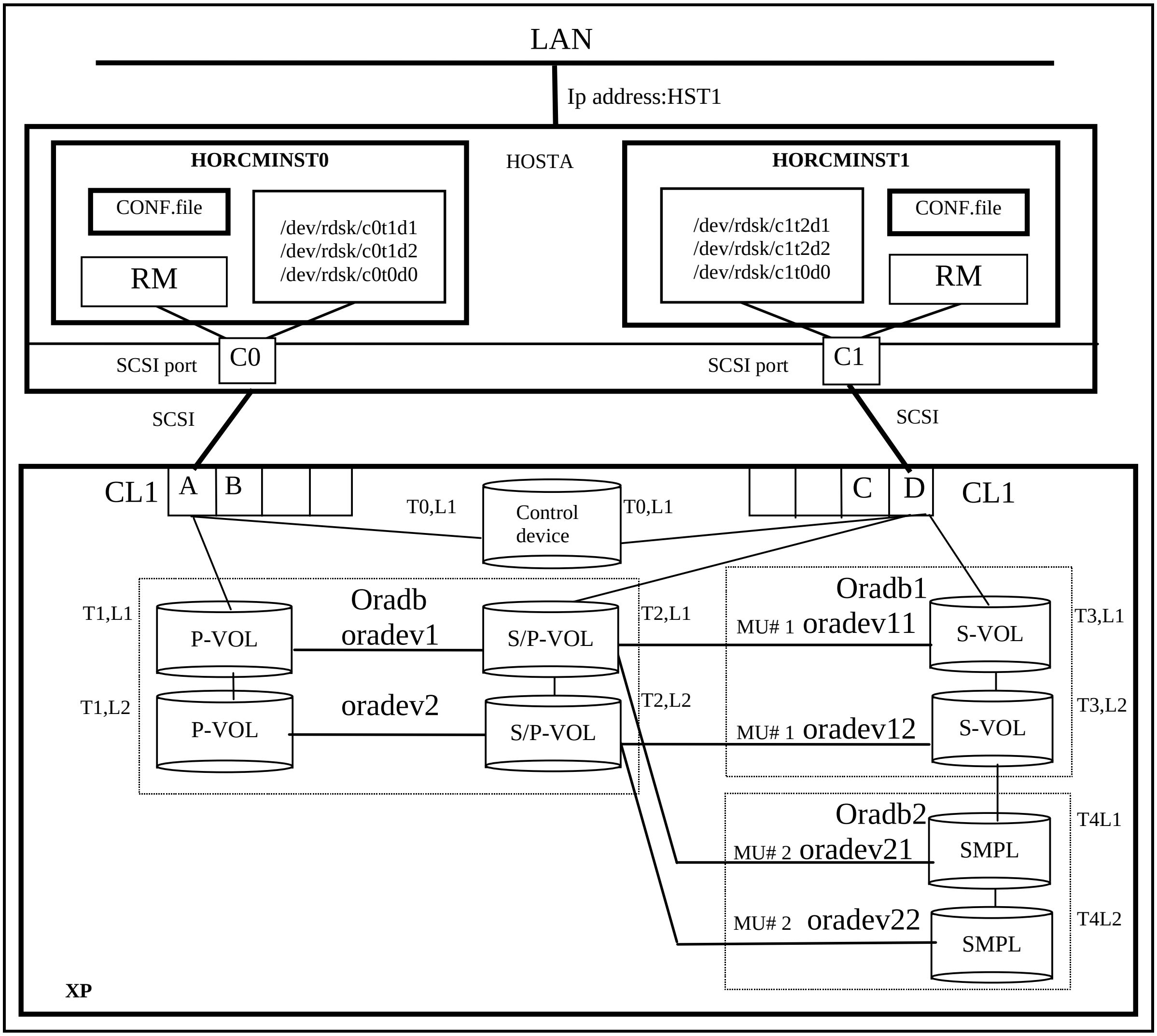
  `# paircreate  -g Oradb2  -d oradev2-1  -vr`

  In the example configuration, this pairs **CL1-A, T1, L1** and **CL2-D, T2, L1**

- Designate a group name and confirm pair volume state:

```
#  pairdisplay  -g Oradb2
Group PairVol(L/R) (Port#,TID,LU-M), Seq#,  LDEV#..P/S,  Status, Seq#,  P-LDEV# M
oradb oradev2-1(L) (CL2-D, 2,  1-0)  30053     24..S-VOL  COPY   -----    18    -
oradb oradev2-1(R) (CL1-A, 1,  1-2)  30053     18..P-VOL  COPY   30053    24    -
oradb oradev2-2(L) (CL2-D, 2,  2-0)  30053     25..S-VOL  COPY   -----    19    -
oradb oradev2-2(R) (CL1-A, 1,  2-2)  30053     19..P-VOL  COPY   30053    25    -
```

Configuration for a BC cascaded connection



Configuration file for HOSTA shown on page 285 (/etc/horcm0.conf)

```
HORCM_MON
#ip_address    service    poll(10ms)     timeout(10ms)
HST1            horcm0     1000                3000

HORCM_CMD
#dev_name
/dev/xxx
```

(See “Note” on page 264)

```
HORCM_DEV
#dev_group      dev_name      port#      TargetID  LU#   MU#
Oradb           oradev1       CL1-A          1       1     0
Oradb           oradev2       CL1-A          1       2     0
Oradb1          oradev11      CL1-D          3       1     0
Oradb1          oradev12      CL1-D          3       2     0
Oradb2          oradev21      CL1-D          4       1     0
Oradb2          oradev22      CL1-D          4       2     0

HORCM_INST
#dev_group        ip_address         service
Oradb                HST1              horcm1
Oradb1               HST1              horcm1
Oradb2               HST1              horcm1
```

Configuration file for HOSTA shown on page 285 (/etc/horcm1.conf)

```
HORCM_MON
#ip_address    service    poll(10ms)     timeout(10ms)
HST1            horcm1     1000                3000

HORCM_CMD
#dev_name
/dev/xxx
```

(See “Note” on page 264)

```
HORCM_DEV
#dev_group      dev_name      port#      TargetID  LU#   MU#
Oradb           oradev1       CL1-D          2       1     0
Oradb           oradev2       CL1-D          2       2     0
Oradb1          oradev11      CL1-D          2       1     1
Oradb1          oradev12      CL1-D          2       2     1
Oradb2          oradev21      CL1-D          2       1     2
Oradb2          oradev22      CL1-D          2       2     2

HORCM_INST
#dev_group        ip_address         service
Oradb                HST1              horcm0
Oradb1               HST1              horcm0
Oradb2               HST1              horcm0
```

BC cascaded connection command examples

Commands from HOSTA, Instance 0 shown on page 285

The following examples employ RM commands from HOSTA, Instance 0.

- When the command execution environment is not set, set the instance number. (If C shell)

  `#  setenv HORCMINST 0`

  (Windows NT/2000/2003) **`set  HORCMINST=0`**

- Set the **HORCC_MRCF** environment variable. (If C shell)

  `#  setenv HORCC_MRCF  1`

  (Windows NT/2000/2003) **`set  HORCC_MRCF=1`**

- Designate group names (**Oradb** and **Oradb1**) and a local instance P-VOL:

  `#  paircreate  -g Oradb  -vl`

  `#  paircreate  -g Oradb1  -vr`

  This command begins a pair coupling between the four pairs of volumes designated as **Oradb** and **Oradb1** in the configuration definition file.

- Designate a group name and confirm pair states:

```
#  pairdisplay  -g oradb -m cas
Group   PairVol(L/R) (Port#,TID,LU-M), Seq#, LDEV#..P/S,  Status, Seq#,  P-LDEV# M
oradb   oradev1(L)   (CL1-A, 1,  1-0)  30053   266..P-VOL  PAIR   30053    268   -
oradb   oradev1(R)   (CL1-D, 2,  1-0)  30053   268..S-VOL  PAIR   -----    266   -
oradb1  oradev11(L)  (CL1-D, 2,  1-1)  30053   268..P-VOL  PAIR   30053    270   -
oradb2  oradev21(R)  (CL1-D, 2,  1-2)  30053   268..SMPL   ----   -----   ----   -
oradb   oradev2(L)   (CL1-A, 1,  1-0)  30053   267..P-VOL  PAIR   30053    269   -
oradb   oradev2(R)   (CL1-D, 2,  2-0)  30053   269..S-VOL  PAIR   -----    267   -
oradb1  oradev12(L)  (CL1-D, 2,  2-1)  30053   269..P-VOL  PAIR   30053    271   -
oradb2  oradev22(R)  (CL1-D, 2,  2-2)  30053   269..SMPL   ----   -----   ----   -
```

Commands from HOSTA, Instance 1 shown on page 285

The following examples employ RM commands from HOSTA, Instance 1.

- Set the instance number. (If C shell)

  # setenv HORCMINST 1

  (Windows NT/2000/2003) **set HORCMINST=1**

- Set the **HORCC_MRCF** environment variable. (If C shell)

  # setenv HORCC_MRCF 1

  (Windows NT/2000/2003) **set HORCC_MRCF=1**

- Designate group names (**Oradb** and **Oradb1**) and a remote instance P-VOL:

  # paircreate -g Oradb -vr

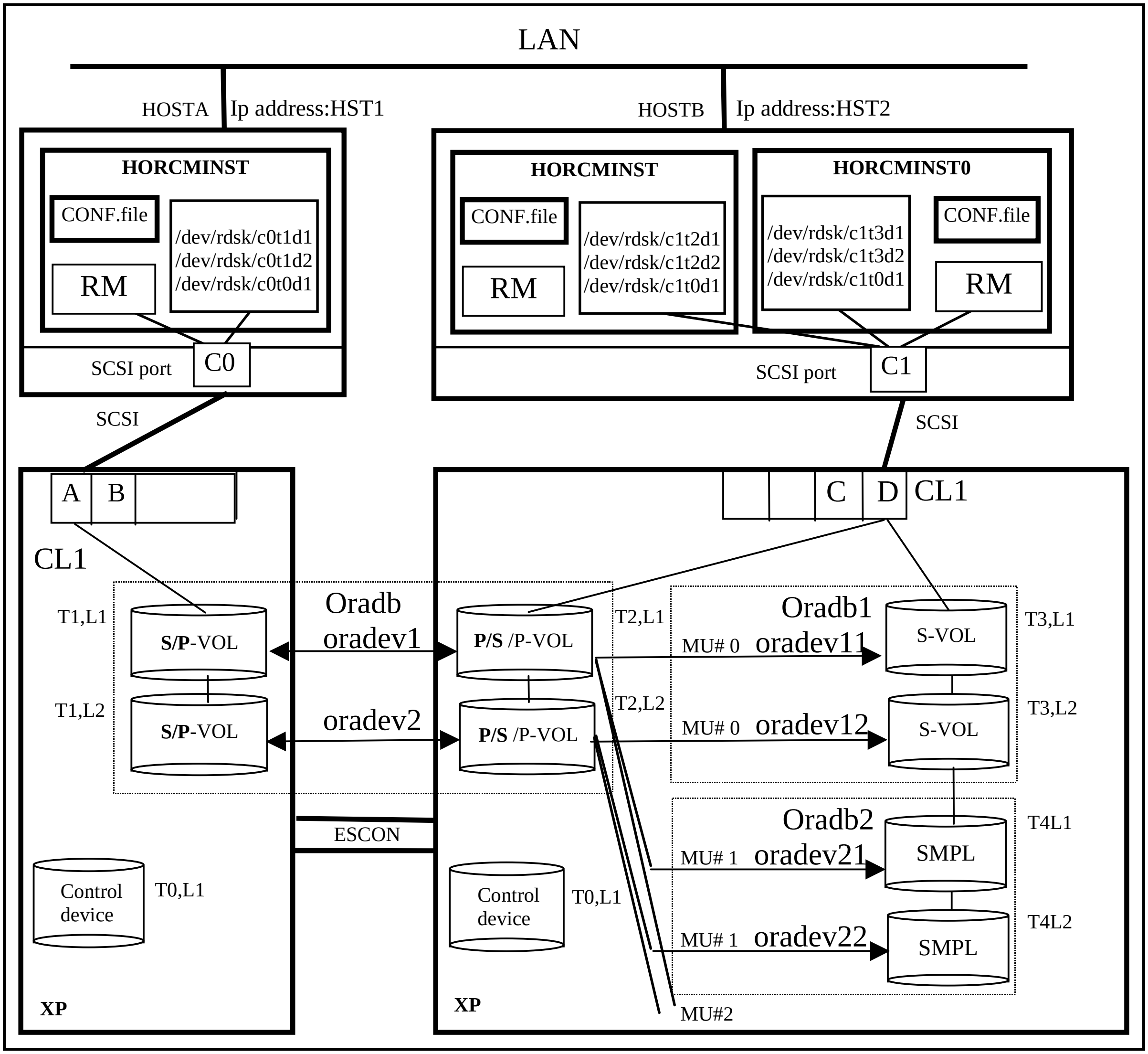
  # paircreate -g Oradb1 -vl

  This command begins a pair coupling between the four pairs of volumes designated as **Oradb** and **Oradb1** in the configuration definition file.

- Designate a group name and confirm pair states:

```
#  pairdisplay  -g oradb -m cas
Group  PairVol(L/R) (Port#,TID,LU-M), Seq#, LDEV#..P/S,  Status, Seq#,  P-LDEV# M
oradb  oradev1(L)   (CL1-D, 2,  1-0)  30053   268..P-VOL  PAIR   -----    266   -
oradb  oradev11(R)  (CL1-D, 2,  1-1)  30053   268..S-VOL  PAIR   30053    270   -
oradb1 oradev21(L)  (CL1-D, 2,  1-2)  30053   268..P-VOL  ----   -----   ----   -
oradb2 oradev1(R)   (CL1-A, 1,  1-0)  30053   266..SMPL   PAIR   30053    268   -
oradb  oradev2(L)   (CL1-D, 2,  2-0)  30053   269..P-VOL  PAIR   -----    267   -
oradb1 oradev12(R)  (CL1-D, 2,  2-1)  30053   269..S-VOL  PAIR   30053    271   -
oradb2 oradev22(L)  (CL1-D, 2,  2-2)  30053   269..P-VOL  ----   -----   ----   -
oradb  oradev2(R)   (CL1-A, 1,  2-0)  30053   267..SMPL   PAIR   30053    269   -
```

Configuration for a CA/BC cascaded connection



Configuration file for HOSTA shown on page 289 (/etc/horcm.conf)

```
HORCM_MON
#ip_address    service     poll(10ms)     timeout
HST1            horcm       1000            3000

HORCM_CMD
#dev_name
/dev/xxx    (See "Note" on page 264)

HORCM_DEV
#dev_group      dev_name      port#      TargetID   LU#   MU#
Oradb           oradev1       CL1-A         1        1
Oradb           oradev2       CL1-A         1        2

HORCM_INST
#dev_group       ip_address          service
Oradb               HST2               horcm
Oradb               HST2               horcm0
```

Configuration file for HOSTB shown on page 289 (/etc/horcm.conf)

```
HORCM_MON
#ip_address    service     poll(10ms)     timeout(10ms)
HST2            horcm1      1000               3000

HORCM_CMD
#dev_name
/dev/xxx    (See "Note" on page 264)

HORCM_DEV
#dev_group      dev_name      port#      TargetID   LU#   MU#
Oradb           oradev1       CL1-D         2        1
Oradb           oradev2       CL1-D         2        2
Oradb1          oradev11      CL1-D         2        1     0
Oradb1          oradev12      CL1-D         2        2     0
Oradb2          oradev21      CL1-D         2        1     1
Oradb2          oradev22      CL1-D         2        2     1

HORCM_INST
#dev_group       ip_address          service
Oradb               HST1               horcm
Oradb1              HST2               horcm0
Oradb2              HST2               horcm0
```

Configuration file for HOSTB shown on page 289 (/etc/horcm0.conf)

```
HORCM_MON
#ip_address    service    poll(10ms)     timeout(10ms)
HST2            horcm0     1000              3000

HORCM_CMD
#dev_name
/dev/xxx   (See "Note" on page 264)

HORCM_DEV
#dev_group      dev_name      port#      TargetID  LU#  MU#
Oradb           oradev1       CL1-D           2      1
Oradb           oradev2       CL1-D           2      2
Oradb1          oradev11      CL1-D           3      1    0
Oradb1          oradev12      CL1-D           3      2    0
Oradb2          oradev21      CL1-D           4      1    0
Oradb2          oradev22      CL1-D           4      2    0

HORCM_INST
#dev_group        ip_address         service
Oradb                HST1              horcm
Oradb1               HST2              horcm
Oradb2               HST2              horcm
```

CA/BC cascaded connection command examples

Commands from HOSTA and HOSTB shown on page 289

The following examples employ RM commands from HOSTA and HOSTB.

- Set the **HORCC_MRCF** environment variable. (If C shell)

  `#  setenv HORCC_MRCF  1`

  (Windows NT/2000/2003) **`set  HORCC_MRCF=1`**

- Designate a group name (**Oradb**) on the CA environment of HOSTA:

  `#  paircreate  -g Oradb  -vl`

- Designate a group name (**Oradb1**) on the BC environment of HOSTB:

  `#  paircreate  -g Oradb1  -vl`

  This command begins a pair coupling between the four pairs of volumes designated as **Oradb** and **Oradb1** in the configuration definition file.

- Designate a group name and confirm pair volume state on HOSTA:

```
#  pairdisplay  -g oradb -m cas
Group  PairVol(L/R) (Port#,TID,LU-M), Seq#, LDEV#..P/S,  Status, Seq#,  P-LDEV# M
oradb  oradev1(L)   (CL1-A, 1,  1-0)  30053   266..SMPL   ----   -----  ----   -
oradb  oradev1(L)   (CL1-A, 1,  1)    30053   266..P-VOL  COPY   30053   268   -
oradb1 oradev11(R)  (CL1-D, 2,  1-0)  30053   268..P-VOL  COPY   30053   270   -
oradb2 oradev21(R)  (CL1-D, 2,  1-1)  30053   268..SMPL   ----   -----  ----   -
oradb  oradev1(R)   (CL1-D, 2,  1)    30053   268..S-VOL  COPY   -----   266   -
oradb  oradev2(L)   (CL1-A, 1,  2-0)  30053   267..SMPL   ----   -----  ----   -
oradb  oradev2(L)   (CL1-A, 1,  2)    30053   267..P-VOL  COPY   30053   269   -
oradb1 oradev12(R)  (CL1-D, 2,  2-0)  30053   269..P-VOL  COPY   30053   271   -
oradb2 oradev22(R)  (CL1-D, 2,  2-1)  30053   269..SMPL   ----   -----  ----   -
oradb  oradev2(R)   (CL1-D, 2,  2)    30053   269..S-VOL  COPY   -----   267   -
```

Commands from HOSTB shown on page 289

The following examples employ RM commands from HOSTB.

- Set the **HORCC_MRCF** environment variable. (If C shell)

  # setenv HORCC_MRCF 1

  (Windows NT/2000/2003) **set HORCC_MRCF=1**

- Designate a group name (**Oradb**) on the CA environment of HOSTB:

  # paircreate -g Oradb -vr

- Designate a group name (**Oradb1**) on the BC environment of HOSTB:

  # paircreate -g Oradb1 -vl

  This command begins a pair coupling between the four pairs of volumes designated as **Oradb** in the configuration definition file.

- Designate a group name and confirm pair volume state on the CA environment of HOSTB:

```
#  pairdisplay  -g oradb -m cas
Group   PairVol(L/R)  (Port#,TID,LU-M), Seq#, LDEV#..P/S,  Status, Seq#,  P-LDEV# M
oradb1 oradev11(L)  (CL1-D, 2,  1-0)  30053   268..P-VOL  PAIR   30053    270   -
oradb2 oradev21(L)  (CL1-D, 2,  1-1)  30053   268..SMPL   ----   -----   ----   -
oradb  oradev1(L)   (CL1-D, 2,  1)    30053   268..S-VOL  PAIR   -----    266   -
oradb  oradev1(R)   (CL1-A, 1,  1-0)  30053   266..SMPL   ----   -----   ----   -
oradb  oradev1(R)   (CL1-A, 1,  1)    30053   266..P-VOL  PAIR   30053    268   -
oradb1 oradev12(L)  (CL1-D, 2,  2-0)  30053   269..P-VOL  PAIR   30053    271   -
oradb2 oradev22(L)  (CL1-D, 2,  2-1)  30053   269..SMPL   ----   -----   ----   -
oradb  oradev2(L)   (CL1-D, 2,  2)    30053   269..S-VOL  PAIR   -----    267   -
oradb  oradev2(R)   (CL1-A, 1,  2-0)  30053   267..SMPL   ----   -----   ----   -
oradb  oradev2(R)   (CL1-A, 1,  2)    30053   267..P-VOL  PAIR   30053    269   -
```

- Designate a group name and confirm BC pair states from HOSTB:

```
#  pairdisplay  -g oradb1 -m cas
Group  PairVol(L/R) (Port#,TID,LU-M), Seq#, LDEV#..P/S,  Status, Seq#,  P-LDEV# M
oradb1 oradev11(L)  (CL1-D, 2,  1-0)  30053   268..P-VOL  PAIR   30053    270   -
oradb2 oradev21(L)  (CL1-D, 2,  1-1)  30053   268..SMPL   ----   -----   ----   -
oradb  oradev1(L)   (CL1-D, 2,  1)    30053   268..S-VOL  PAIR   -----    266   -
oradb1 oradev11(L)  (CL1-D, 3,  1-0)  30053   270..S-VOL  PAIR   -----    268   -
oradb1 oradev12(L)  (CL1-D, 2,  2-0)  30053   269..P-VOL  PAIR   30053    271   -
oradb2 oradev22(L)  (CL1-D, 2,  2-1)  30053   269..SMPL   ----   -----   ----   -
oradb  oradev2(R)   (CL1-D, 2,  2)    30053   269..S-VOL  PAIR   -----    267   -
oradb1 oradev12(R)  (CL1-D, 3,  2-0)  30053   271..S-VOL  PAIR   -----    269   -
```

- Designate a group name and confirm BC pair states from HOSTB, Instance 0:

```
#  pairdisplay  -g oradb1 -m cas
Group  PairVol(L/R) (Port#,TID,LU-M), Seq#, LDEV#..P/S,  Status, Seq#,  P-LDEV# M
oradb1 oradev11(L)  (CL1-D, 3,  1-0)  30053   270..S-VOL  PAIR   -----    268   -
oradb1 oradev11(R)  (CL1-D, 2,  1-0)  30053   268..P-VOL  ----   30053    270   -
oradb2 oradev21(R)  (CL1-D, 2,  1-1)  30053   268..SMPL   PAIR   -----   ----   -
oradb  oradev1(R)   (CL1-D, 3,  1)    30053   268..S-VOL  PAIR   -----    266   -
oradb1 oradev12(L)  (CL1-D, 3,  2-0)  30053   271..S-VOL  PAIR   -----    269   -
oradb1 oradev12(R)  (CL1-D, 2,  2-0)  30053   269..P-VOL  ----   30053    271   -
oradb2 oradev22(R)  (CL1-D, 2,  2-1)  30053   269..SMPL   PAIR   -----   ----   -
oradb  oradev2(R)   (CL1-D, 3,  2)    30053   269..S-VOL  PAIR   -----    267   -
```

Two-host BC configuration

These two RM configuration files illustrate how to configure a two-host BC. Each host will run one instance of RM.

File 1

```
# This is the RaidManager Configuration file for host blue.
# It will manage the PVOLs in the Business Copy pairing.

HORCM_MON
#local host     local service   poll    timeout
blue             horcm0          1000    3000

HORCM_CMD
/dev/rdsk/c4t14d0

HORCM_DEV
#group     disk-name       interface  target      lun   mirror
Group1     disk_1_g1         CL1-A      2          0
Group1     disk_2_g1         CL1-A      2          1

HORCM_INST
#group     remote host      remote service name
Group1     yellow           horcm1
```

File 2

```
# This is the Raid Manager Configuration file for host yellow.
# It will manage the SVOLs in the Business Copy pairing.

HORCM_MON
#local host       local service   poll    timeout
yellow             horcm1          1000      3000

HORCM_CMD
/dev/rdsk/c10t14d0

HORCM_DEV
#group     disk-name       interface  target      lun   mirror
Group1     disk_1_g1        CL1-E       3          3
Group1     disk_2_g1        CL1-E       3          4

HORCM_INST
#group     remote host      remote service name
Group1     blue             horcm0
```

The RM configuration files show one RM group defined. The group, **Group1**, contains two disks. The comments note that system **blue** is defining the P-VOLs and system **yellow** is defining the S-VOLs. However, the P-VOL/S-VOL relationship is set when the **paircreate** command is issued. The set of disks that becomes the P-VOL or S-VOL depends on two conditions:

- the RM instance to which the command is issued
- the option specified in the **paircreate** command

The instance that the command is issued to becomes the local instance. If the option passed to the **paircreate** command is **–vl**, then the volumes defined in the local instance become the P-VOLs. If the option is **–vr**, the volumes defined in the remote instance become the P-VOLs.

Two BC mirror configuration

These two RM configuration files illustrate how to configure two BC mirrors of the same P-VOLs.

File 1

```
# This is the Raid Manager Configuration file for host blue.
# It will manage the PVOLs in the Business Copy pairing.

HORCM_MON
#local host        local service    poll    timeout
blue               horcm0           1000    3000

HORCM_CMD
/dev/rdsk/c4t14d0

HORCM_DEV
#group     disk-name       interface  target      lun   mirror
Group1-0   disk_1_g1-0     CL1-A        2          0       0
Group1-0   disk_2_g1-0     CL1-A        2          1       0
Group1-1   disk_1_g1-1     CL1-A        2          0       1
Group1-1   disk_2_g1-1     CL1-A        2          1       1

HORCM_INST
#group     remote host      remote service name
Group1-0   blue             horcm1
Group1-1   blue             horcm1
```

File 2

```
# This is the Raid Manager Configuration file for host blue.
# It will manage the SVOLs in the Business Copy pairing.

HORCM_MON
#local host      local service    poll    timeout
blue             horcm1           -1      3000

HORCM_CMD
/dev/rdsk/c4t14d0

HORCM_DEV
#group       disk-name          interface  target      lun
Group1-0     disk_1_g1-0        CL1-A        5          5
Group1-0     disk_2_g1-0        CL1-A        5          6
Group1-1     disk_1_g1-1        CL1-A        6          0
Group1-1     disk_2_g1-1        CL1-A        6          1

HORCM_INST
#group       remote host      remote service name
Group1-0     blue             horcm0
Group1-1     blue             horcm0
```

A one-host configuration differs from a two-host configuration as follows:

- The host names for the local and remote are the same.
- The poll value under the **HORCM_MON** section for the S-VOL configuration file is **–1**.

When creating more than one BC of the same P-VOL, the mirror unit column in the **HORCM_DEV** section must be filled in for the P-VOL configuration. Do not fill it in for the S-VOL configuration. If the mirror unit column is not filled in, the default value is 0.

Three-host BC configuration

These three RM configuration files illustrate how to configure a three-host BC. Each host will run one instance of RM.

File 1

```
# This is the Raid Manager configuration file for host blue.
#It will manage the PVOLs in the Business Copy pairing.

HORCM_MON
#local host    local service   poll    timeout
blue           horcm0          1000    3000

HORCM_CMD
/dev/rdsk/c4t14d0

HORCM_DEV
#group     disk-name     interface  target      lun   mirror
Group1     disk_1_g1      CL1-A        2          0
Group1     disk_2_g1      CL1-A        2          1
Group2     disk_1_g2      CL1-A        3          0
Group2     disk_2_g2      CL1-A        4          0
Group2     disk_3_g2      CL1-A        4          1

HORCM_INST
#group     remote host      remote service name
Group1     yellow           horcm1
Group2     green            horcm0
```

File 2

```
# This is the Raid Manager Configuration file for host yellow.
# It will manage the SVOLs in the Business Copy pairing.

HORCM_MON
#local host    local service   poll    timeout
yellow         horcm1           -1      3000

HORCM_CMD
/dev/rdsk/c10t14d0

HORCM_DEV
#group     disk-name     interface  target     lun   mirror
Group1     disk_1_g1       CL1-E       3         3
Group1     disk_2_g1       CL1-E       3         4

HORCM_INST
#group     remote host     remote service name
Group1     blue              horcm0
```

File 3

```
# This is the Raid Manager Configuration file for host green.
# It will manage the SVOLs in the Business Copy pairing.

HORCM_MON
#local host    local service   poll    timeout
green          horcm0           -1      3000

HORCM_CMD
/dev/rdsk/c10t14d0

HORCM_DEV
#group     disk-name      interface  target      lun   mirror
Group2     disk_1_g2       CL1-F       3          3
Group2     disk_2_g2       CL1-F       3          4
Group2     disk_2_g2       CL1-F       3          5

HORCM_INST
#group     remote host     remote service name
Group2     blue            horcm0
```

Device group configuration

This RM configuration file shows how to configure two device groups that belong to different unit IDs (disk arrays).

File 1

```
HORCM_MON
#ip_address       service     poll(10ms)    timeout(10ms)
HST1               horcm        1000           3000

HORCM_CMD
#unitID 0... (seq#30014)
#dev_name     dev_name     dev_name
/dev/rdsk/c0t0d0
#unitID 1... (seq#30015)
#dev_name     dev_name     dev_name
/dev/rdsk/c1t0d0

HORCM_DEV
#dev_group     dev_name     port#     TagetID     LU#     MU#
oradb          oradb1       CL1-A        3          0
oradb          oradb2       CL1-A        3          1
oralog         oralog1      CL1-A1       5          0
oralog         oralog2      CL1-A1       5          1
oralog         oralog3      CL1-A1       5          2

HORCM_INST
#dev_group    ip_address     service
oradb          HST2           horcm
oradb          HST3           horcm
oralog         HST3           horcm
```

B

HA Failover and failback

This appendix covers high availability (HA) failover and failback sequences.

Using RAID Manager in HA environments

When using HA software (such as MC/ServiceGuard or Cluster Extension XP), application packages can be transferred to the takeover host node at any time. If the application package transfer operation is performed in an environment where CA is used, you may need to switch the CA secondary volumes to primary volumes. The **horctakeover** command provides this function.

The **horctakeover** command provides macro functions to determine the data consistency of the S-VOL and to perform these takeover functions:

- takeover-switch
- swap-takeover
- SVOL-takeover
- PVOL-takeover

The **horctakeover** command is not available for BC.

HA control script state transitions

The table on page 311 lists volume states and state transitions resulting from the execution of either **pairvolchk** or **horctakeover** in HA control scripts from either Data Center 1 (DC1) or Data Center 2 (DC2).

When a HA failover/failback control script is activated, it will:

- retrieve the state of the CA paired volume accessible to the local host (via **pairvolchk –s**)
- retrieve the state of the remote side of the pair (via **pairvolchk –s –c**)
- select the proper action (for example, failover, failback, ask for operator intervention, etc.)

state No	Volume Attributes and Pair Status: DC1(DC2)	Volume Attributes and Pair Status: DC2(DC1)	Execution Results of pairvolchk and horctakeover from DC1(DC2): pairvolchk –s (local volume)	pairvolchk –s –c (remote volume)	PAIR STATUS	Horctakeover result
1	SMPL or SVOL-PSUS (SSWS)	SMPL	SMPL or SVOL-PSUS	SMPL	SMPL	EX_VOLCRE
2		P-VOL COPY		PVOL_XXX	XXX	Nop
3		PAIR/PFUL				
4		PSUS				
4-1		PFUS				
5		PSUE				
6		PDUB				
8		S-VOL		EX_EVOLCE		EX_EVOLCE
9		Unknown		EX_ENORMT or EX_CMDIOE		(EX_ENORMT) (EX_CMDIOE)
10	P-VOL	SMPL	PVOL_XXX	SMPL	XXX	EX_VOLCRE
11		P-VOL		EX_EVOLCE		EX_EVOLCE
12	data or status && PSUE or PDUB	S-VOL		SVOL_YYY	XXX	PVOL-PSUE → 12 or PVOL-SMPL →8
	Other					Nop
13	data or status && PSUE or PDUB	Unknown		EX_ENORMT or EX_CMDIOE	XXX	PVOL-PSUE → 13 or PVOL-SMPL → 9
	Other					Nop
14	S-VOL	SMPL	SVOL_YY	EX_EVOLCE		EX_EVOLCE
15		P-VOL COPY		PVOL_XXX	XXX	SVOL_E* → 4,5 SVOL_E*
16		PAIR/PFUL				Swap → 12
17		PSUS				SVOL_E → 4
		PFUS				SVOL → 4-1
18		PSUE PDUB data				SVOL → 5,6
		status				SVOL_E → 5,6
		never				SVOL_E → 5,6
		async				SVOL → 5,6
21		S-VOL		EX_EVOLCE		EX_EVOLCE
22	COPY	Unknown		EX_ENORMT or EX_CMDIOE	YYY	SVOL_E * → 4,5 SVOL_E*
23	PAIR/ PFUL data					SVOL → 4
	status					SVOL → 4
	never					SVOL_E → 4
	async					SVOL → 4
24	PSUS					SVOL_E → 4
	PFUS					SVOL → 4-1
25	PSUE PDUB data					SVOL → 5,6
	status					SVOL_E → 5,6
	never					SVOL_E → 5,6
	async					SVOL → 5,6

Table terms:

XXX	Pair status of P-VOL that was returned by the **pairvolchk –s or pairvolchk –s –c** command.
YYY	Pair status of S-VOL that was returned by the **pairvolchk –s or pairvolchk –s –c** command.
PAIR STATUS	Since the P-VOL controls status, PAIR STATUS is reported as PVOL_XXX (except when the P-VOLs status is Unknown).
PVOL-PSUE	PVOL-PSUE-takeover
PVOL-SMPL	PVOL-SMPL-takeover
Nop	Nop-takeover
Swap	swap-takeover

When the **horctakeover** command execution succeeds, the state transitions to that of the shown (→) number.

XP256 microcode 52-47-xx and under
XP512/48 microcode 10-00-xx and under

With older firmware, a **horctakeover** used to result in a SMPL S-VOL, which necessitated a full copy at failback time. See "Swap-takeover function" .

SVOL	SVOL-SMPL takeover
SVOL_E	Execute SVOL-SMPL takeover and return EX_VOLCUR.
SVOL_E*	Execute SVOL-SMPL takeover and return EX_VOLCUR.

XP256 microcode 52-47-xx and over
XP512/48 microcode 10-00-xx and over
XP1024/XP128
XP12000

With newer firmware, a **horctakeover** results in a SSWS state S-VOL so that a delta copy is all that is required at failback. This functionality is known as “fast failback” and is accomplished via the **–swaps|p** option to **pairresync**.

SVOL	SVOL-SSUS takeover or swap-takeover In case of a host failure, this function will execute swap-takeover. In case of an ESCON/FC link or P-VOL site failure, this function will execute SVOL-SSUS-takeover.
SVOL_E	Execute SVOL-SSUS takeover and return EX_VOLCUR
SVOL_E*	Return EX_VOLCUR

When the **horctakeover** command execution succeeds, the state transitions (→) to that of the shown line number.

For instance, if the HA control script sees svol_pair at the local volume and pvol_pair at the remote volume (as in State 16), it performs a swap-takeover that results in a State 12 situation.

Failback after SVOL-SMPL takeover

This failover situation occurs, for instance, when:

- The original P-VOL status is unavailable
- The S-VOL is changed to SMPL and unable to failback.

The Host B (DC1) sequence illustrated by the following figures is required to change the SMPL volume to pvol_pair and make it suitable for failback.

From the Data Center 1 (DC1) side, the required steps are:

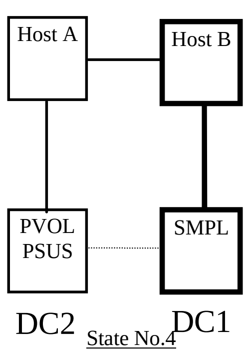
1. pairsplit –S
2. paircreate **–vl**
3. pairevtwait (wait for PAIR)

From the Data Center 2 (DC2) side, the required steps (not shown) would be:

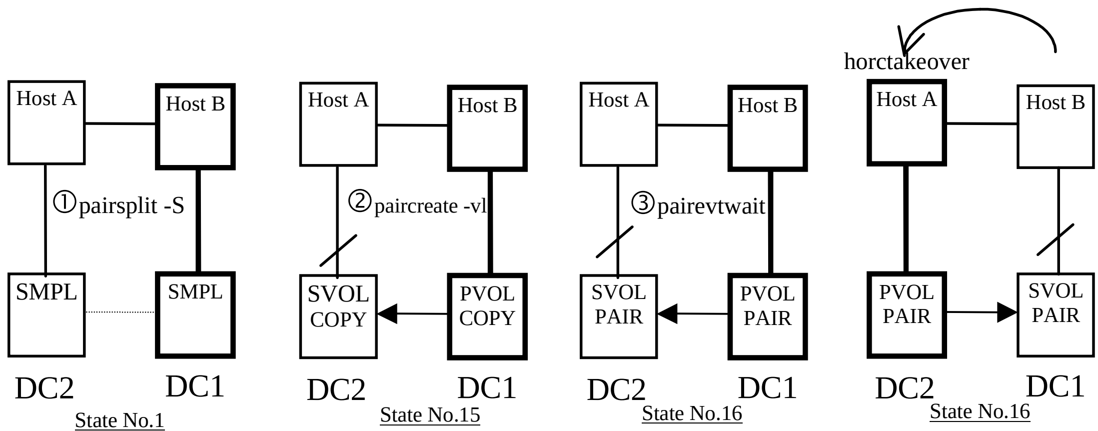
1. pairsplit –S
2. paircreate **–vr**
3. pairevtwait (wait for PAIR)

Refer to the state definitions in the table under the heading "HA control script state transitions" on page 304.

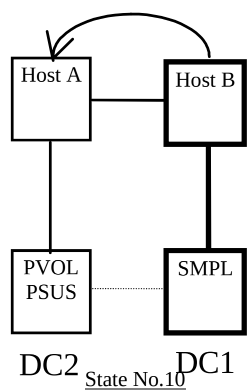
Initial state:



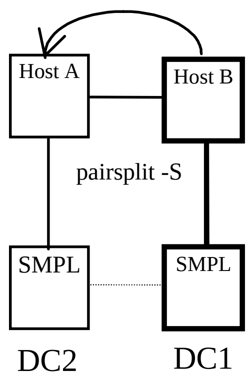
- When the DC2 volume becomes a svol_pair, it executes a swap-takeover to become a pvol_pair:



- If DC2 attempts a failback while the DC1 volume is still SMPL, it is a State 10 situation. The takeover operation returns an EX_VOLCRE (local/remote vol currency) error.



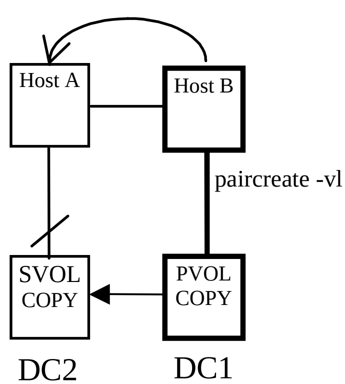
- If a takeover operation is attempted while both volumes are SMPL (State 1), an EX_VOLCRE error results. If **pairvolchk** is executed during a volume group split, it would likely return an EX_ENQVOL error, indicating that the statuses of the volumes in the group do not match.



State No.1

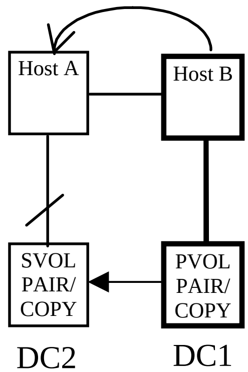
- If a takeover is needed during State 15 (copy), the HA script could either run **pairevtwait** to wait for PAIR state, or prompt for system administrator intervention. If you choose to continue, an SVOL-takeover and an EX_VOLCUR error results.

  An attempt to execute **pairvolchk** in the middle of a group **paircreate** returns an EX_ENQVOL error on the DC2 side.



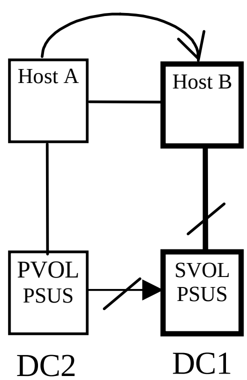
State No.15

- An attempt to do a takeover prior to all group volumes reaching PAIR state (svol_copy) results in a SVOL-takeover and an EX_VOLCUR error.



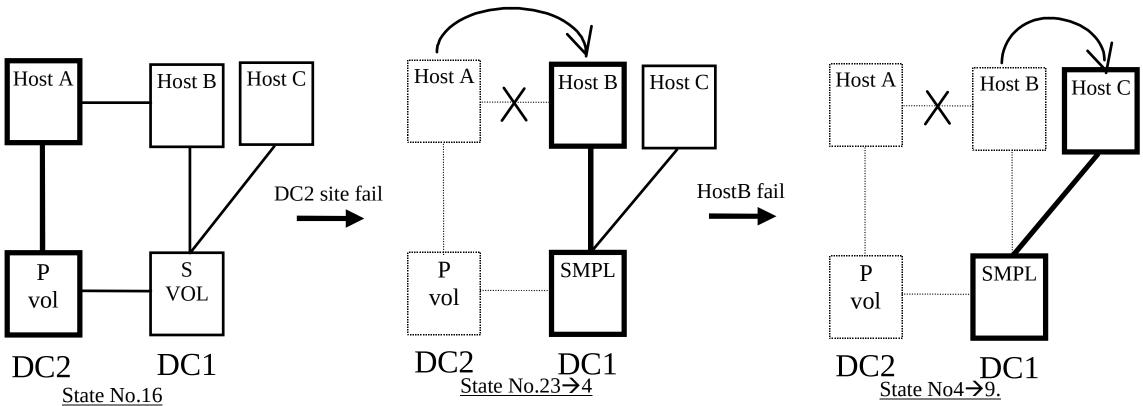
State No.16

- The HA script should prompt you for a decision before attempting a takeover in SVOL_PSUS (stale data) State 17, because it will result in a SVOL-takeover and an EX_VOLCUR error.



State No.17

- The **horctakeover** command will fail with an EX_ENORMT error in the following nested failure case (State No. 4 → 9). Therefore, the HA Control Script should prompt you for a decision and not change the volume state on the DC1 side.

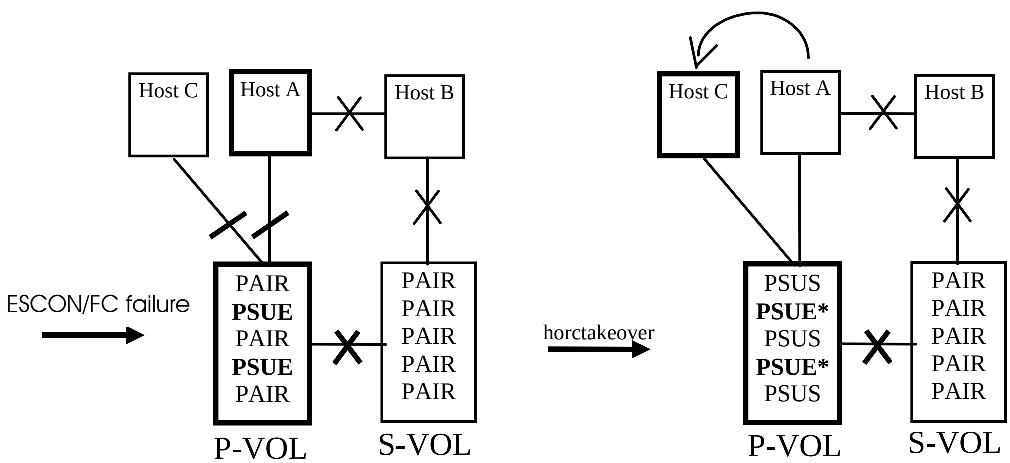


PVOL-PSUE takeover

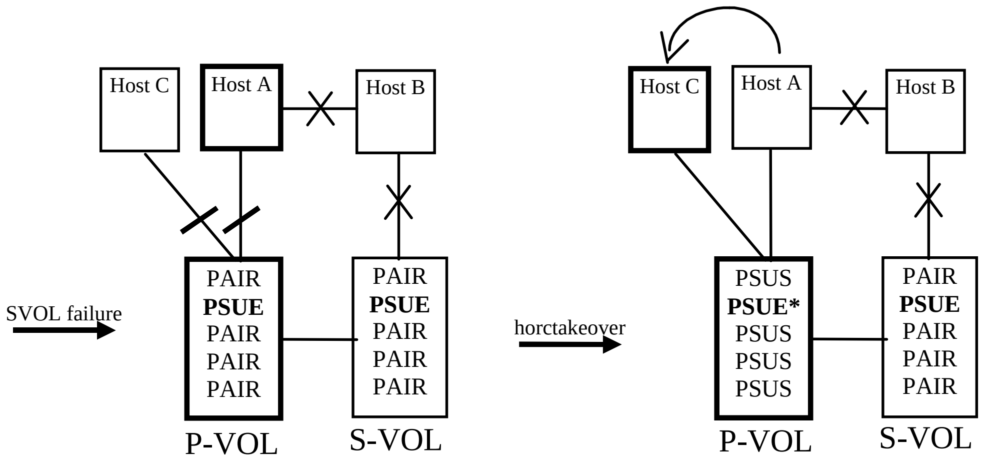
The **horctakeover** command executes a PVOL-PSUE-takeover when the primary volume cannot report status or refuses writes (for example, data fence).

- PSUE (or PDUB) and the **horctakeover** command returns a PVOL-PSUE-takeover value at **exit()**.
- A PVOL-PSUE-takeover forces the primary volume to the suspend state (PSUE or PDUB → PSUE*, PAIR → PSUS), which permits WRITEs to all primary volumes of the group.

The following illustrates how volumes in the same volume group may be of different status. Only the volumes that were active at the time of link failure would immediately be PSUE.



- Even if connected to the ESCON/FC link, PVOL-PSUE-takeover changes only the active P-VOL/S-VOLs to suspend state.

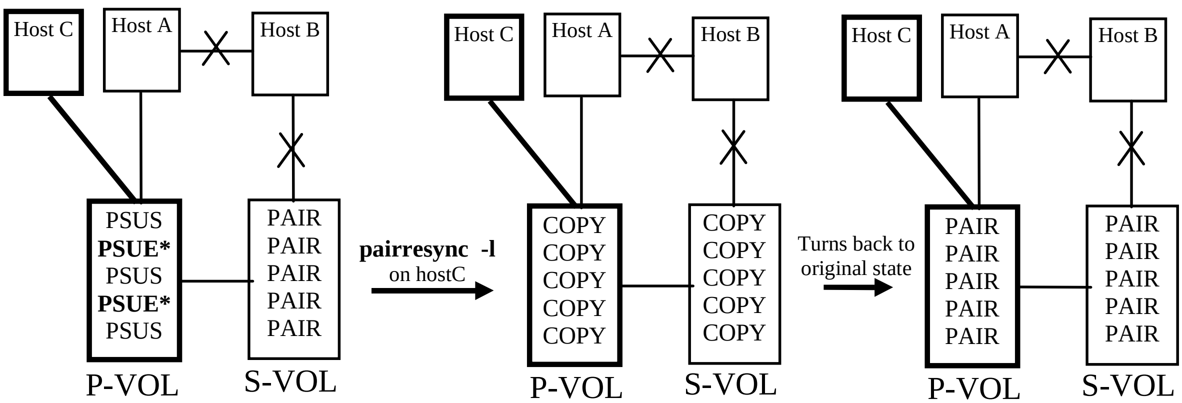


P-VOL group status

The result of the pvol_psue takeover is that PSUE and PSUS status is intermingled within the group. If any volumes are PSUE (or PDUB in the case of LUSE volumes), **pairvolchk** will give them precedence over PSUS as the returned group status.

Recovery after PVOL-PSUE-takeover

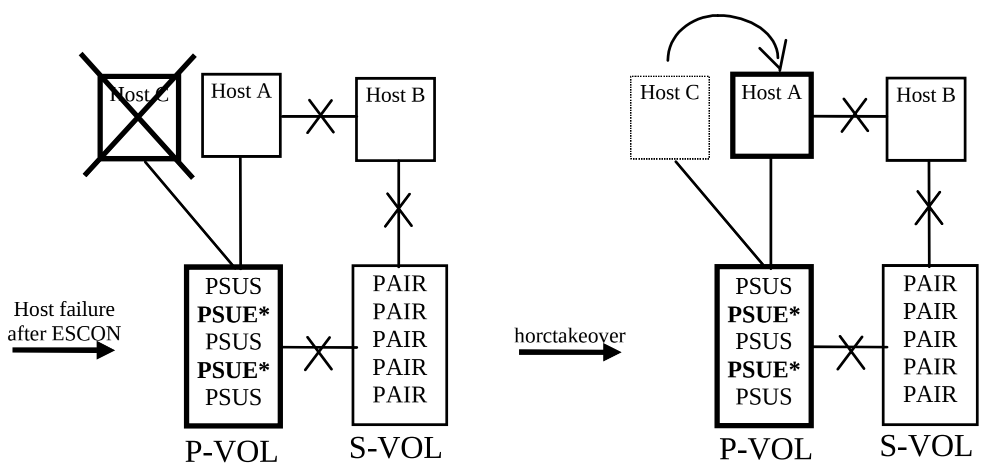
The special **PSUE*** state can be turned back to PAIR state by issuing the **pairresync** command (after the recovery of the ESCON/FC link) instead of the **horctakeover** command.



If the **pairresync** command fails because the ESCON/FC link is not yet restored, the PSUE* state is not changed.

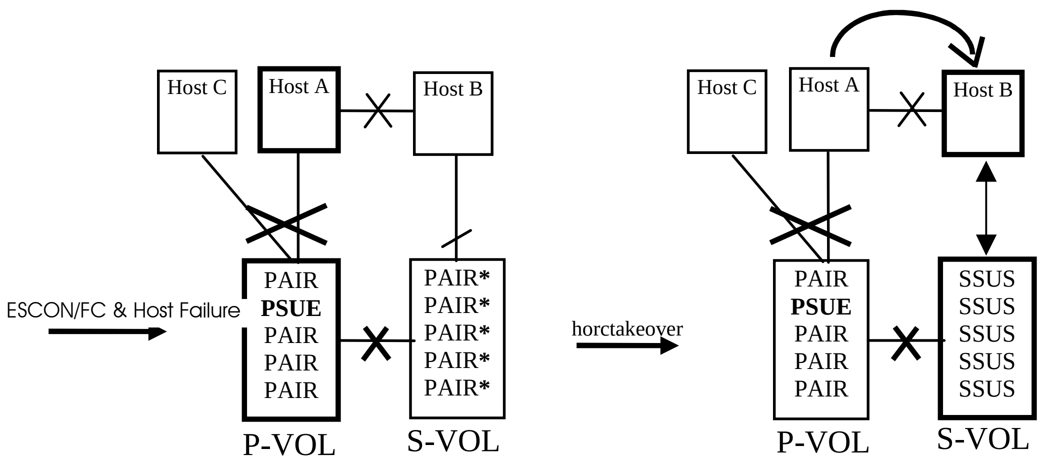
Another PVOL-Takeover Case

The **horctakeover** from Host A (after a Host C failure) performs a PVOL-PSUE-takeover in this nested (multiple) failure case.



SVOL-SSUS-takeover in the case of ESCON/FC link and host failure

An SVOL-Takeover executes an SVOL-SSUS-takeover so that S-VOL writing is enabled without going to SMPL state. A SVOL-SSUS-takeover changes the secondary volume to suspend (PAIR, PSUE → SSUS) state, which permits WRITE and delta data maintenance (BITMAP) for all secondary volumes of the group.



Terms:

PAIR*	Equivalent to PAIR for sync-CA. Equivalent to PAIR → PSUE for async-CA.
SSUS	Equivalent to SVOL_PSUS.

Group status after a SVOL-SSUS-takeover

After a SVOL-SSUS-takeover completes:

- The S-VOL status is displayed as SSUS by the **pairdisplay** command.
- The **pairvolchk** command returns the S-VOL status as SVOL_PSUS.

Also, this special state is displayed as SSWS by using the **–fc** option of the **pairdisplay** command. This special state (PVOL_PSUE and

SVOL_PSUS) between P-VOL and S-VOL may need to handled by HA control scripts.

Async-CA specific behavior

Before the S-VOL is changed to SSUS, an SVOL-takeover will try to copy non-transmitted data, which remains in the FIFO queue (sidefile) of the P-VOL, to the S-VOL side.

In the case of an ESCON/FC link failure, this data synchronize operation may fail. Even so, the SVOL-takeover function performs the force split to SSUS, and enables usage of the secondary volume.

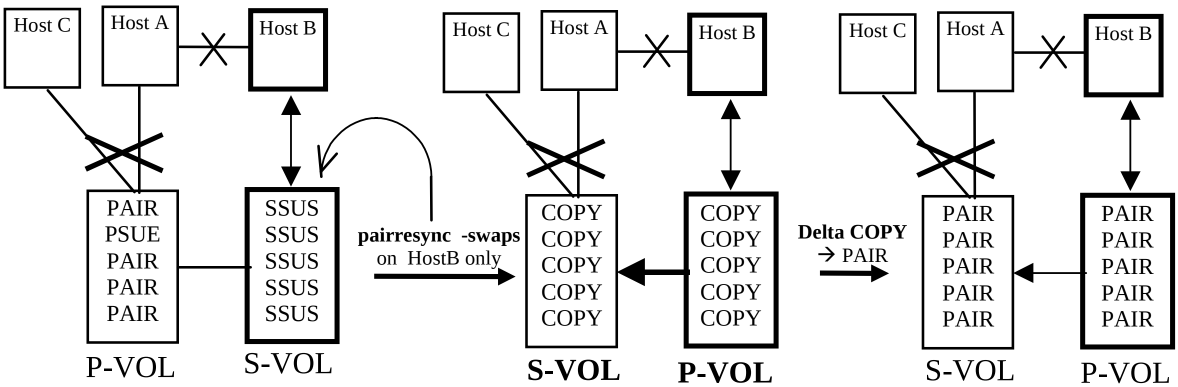
Non-transmitted data, which remains in the FIFO queue (sidefile) of the P-VOL, will be moved to a BITMAP to empty the FIFO queue, and the pair state will be set to PSUE.

Caution

Ordering information regarding the non-transmitted data that is moved to a BITMAP will be lost. The data represented in the bitmap can be resynchronized (lost) as the new S-VOL by issuing ***pairresync –swaps*** *for recovery from a SVOL-SSUS-takeover at the takeover site (Host B).*

Recovery from a SVOL-SSUS-takeover

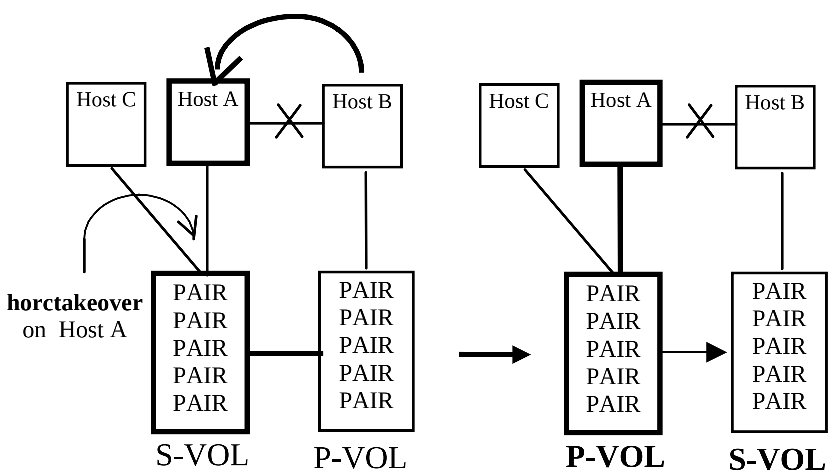
After the recovery of the ESCON/FC link, this special state (PVOL_PSUE and SVOL_PSUS) will be changed to COPY state. Thus, the original S-VOL becomes the NEW_PVOL and overwrites the NEW_SVOL, by issuing the **pairresync –swaps** command at the takeover site (Host B).



If the **pairresync –swaps** command fails because the ESCON/FC link is not yet restored, then the special state (PVOL_PSUE and SVOL_PSUS) is not changed.

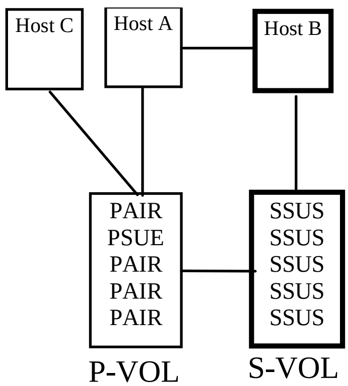
Failback after recovery on Host B

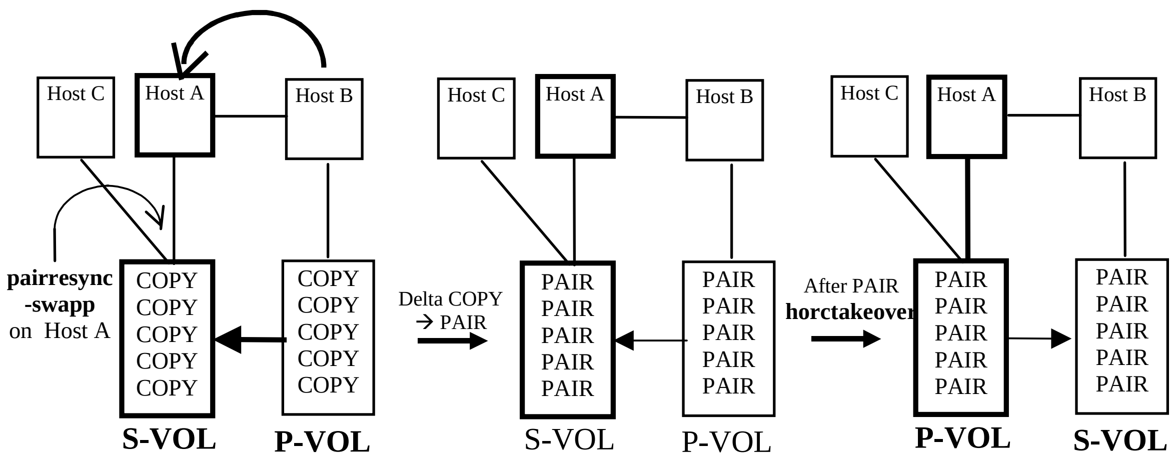
If you stop the application on Host B and restart the application on Host A after a recovery due to the execution of the **pairresync –swaps** command on Host B, then **horctakeover** does a swap-takeover, even though Host A cannot communicate with remote Host B.



Failback without recovery on Host B

The following procedure for recovery is necessary if, after host and ESCON/FC link recovery, you stop the application without executing the **pairresync –swaps** command on Host B and restart the application on the Host A. At that time, the **pairvolchk** command on Host A will return PVOL_PSUE and SVOL_PSUS as the state combination.





pairresync –swapp

This is used to swap the P-VOL/S-VOL designations during the P-VOL suspend state. The new S-VOL is based on the data of the new P-VOL. The target volume of the local host must have been the P-VOL, which was probably out of date.

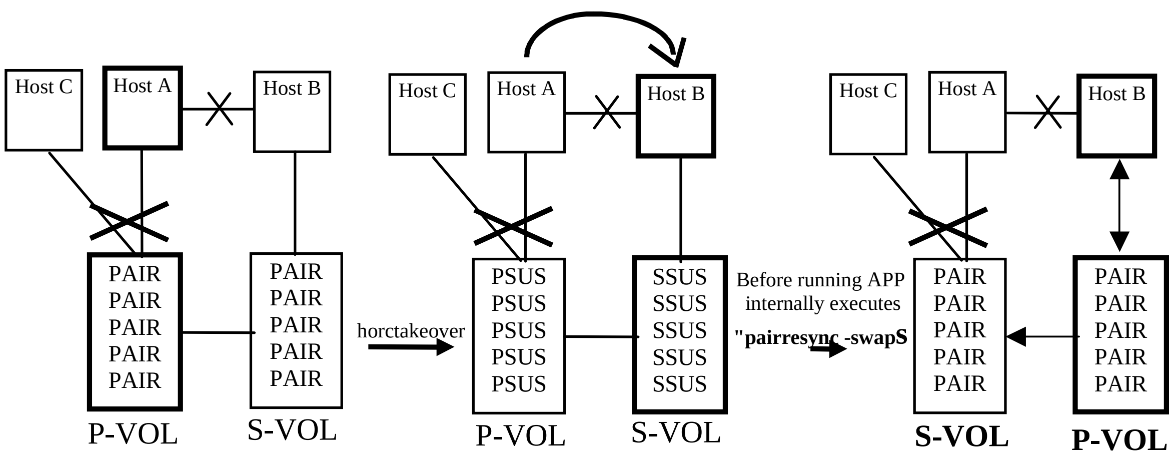
SVOL-takeover in the case of a host failure

After SVOL-takeover changes the S-VOL (only) to suspend (PAIR, PSUE → SSUS) state, the SVOL-takeover will automatically execute the **pairresync –swaps** command to copy data between the new P-VOL and the new S-VOL. The **horctakeover** command returns a swap-takeover.

Async-CA specific behavior

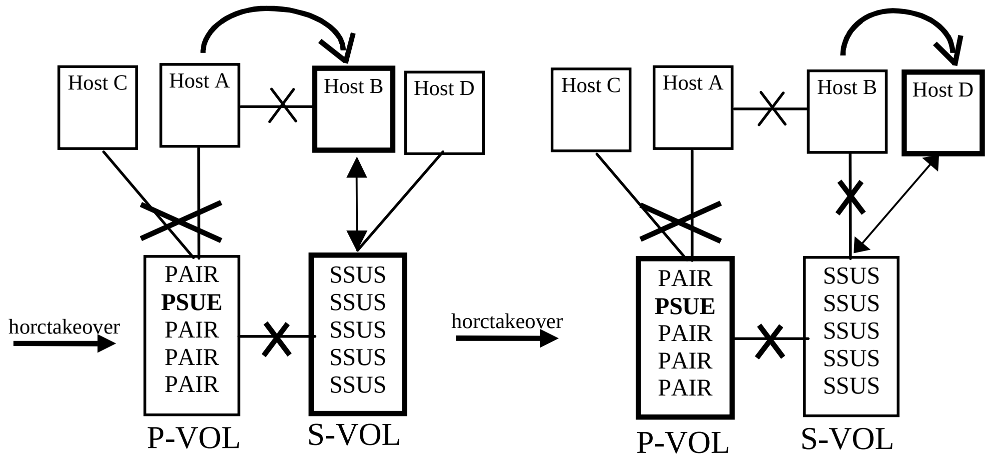
Before the S-VOL is changed to SSUS, the SVOL-takeover operation will copy non-transmitted data (which remains in the P-VOL sidefile) to the S-VOL. The SVOL-takeover operation waits to attempt to copy all P-VOL data to the S-VOL before a timeout (specified by the **–t** *timeout* option).

After all the P-VOL sidefile data has been successfully copied to the S-VOL, the SVOL-takeover operation splits the pairs and changes the S-VOL to SSUS state. The remainder of the operation is the same as for the non-asynchronous case.



Another case of SVOL-takeover

An SVOL-takeover from Host B to Host D will do nothing because the S-VOL was already in SSWS state.



S-VOL data consistency function

The consistency of the data within a pair is determined by the pair status and the fence level of the pair. The **paircurchk** command can be specified for each paired logical volume or each group. If this command is specified for a group, a data consistency check runs for all volumes in the group. Inconsistent volumes are printed in the message log and displayed.

See the table on the next page for details on this function. The terms used are defined in the list following the table.

Object volume				Currency SVOL_Takeover
Attribute	**Status**	**Fence**	**paircurchk**	
SMPL	—	—	Needs to be confirmed	—
P-VOL	—	—	Needs to be confirmed	—
S-VOL	COPY	data		Inconsistent
		status	Inconsistent (due to out-of-order copying)	
		never	Inconsistent	
		async	Inconsistent	
	PAIR	data	OK	OK
		status	OK	OK
		never	Must be analyzed	To be analyzed
		async	Must be analyzed	OK (Assumption)
	PFUL	async	To be analyzed	OK (Assumption)
	PSUS	data	suspect	suspect
		status	suspect	suspect
		never	suspect	suspect
		async	suspect	suspect
	PFUS	async	suspect	OK (Assumption)
	PSUE	data	OK	OK
		status	suspect	suspect
	PDUB	never	suspect	suspect
		async	suspect	OK (Assumption)

(continued)

Object volume				Currency SVOL_Takeover
Attribute	Status	Fence	paircurchk	
	SSWS	data	suspect	—
		status	suspect	—
		never	suspect	—
		async	suspect	—

Terms:

Inconsistent — Data in the volume is inconsistent because it is being copied.

Suspect — The primary volume data and secondary volume data are not consistent (the same).

Must be analyzed — It cannot be determined from the status of the secondary volume whether data is consistent. It is “OK” if the status of the primary volume is PAIR. It is “suspect” if the status is PSUS or PSUE.

Needs to be confirmed — It is necessary to manually check the volume.

When the S-VOL Data Consistency function is used, **paircurchk** sets either of the following returned values in `exit()`, which allows users to check the execution results with a user program.

normal termination — 0 (OK. Data is consistent.)

abnormal termination — Other than 0. (For the error cause and details, see the execution logs.)

Takeover-switch function

The takeover command, when activated manually or by a control script, checks the attributes of volumes on the local and remote disk array to determine the proper takeover action. The table below shows the takeover actions.

Local node (Takeover)		Remote node		Takeover action
Volume attribute	**Fence and status**	**Volume attribute**	**P-VOL status**	
SMPL	—	SMPL	—	NG
		P-VOL	—	Nop-Takeover**
		S-VOL	—	Volumes unconformable
		Unknown	—	NG
P-VOL (primary)	Fence == Data or status and Status == PSUE or PDUB	SMPL	—	NG
		P-VOL	—	Volumes unconformable
		S-VOL	—	PVOL-Takeover*
		Unknown Status For example: LAN down	—	PVOL-Takeover* *required to allow local writes
	Others	SMPL	—	NG
		P-VOL	—	Volumes unconformable
		S-VOL	—	Nop-Takeover**
		Unknown Status For example: LAN down	—	Nop-Takeover** **no action needed to allow local writes

(continued)

Local node (Takeover)		Remote node		Takeover action
Volume attribute	Fence and status	Volume attribute	P-VOL status	
S-VOL (secondary)	Status == SSWS (After SVOL_SSUS-takeover)	Don’t care	—	Nop-Takeover**
	Others	SMPL	—	Volumes unconformable
		P-VOL	PAIR or PFUL	Swap-Takeover*
			Others	SVOL-Takeover*
		S-VOL	—	Volumes unconformable
		Unknown	—	SVOL-Takeover*

Terms:

nop-takeover — No operation is done, though the takeover command is accepted.

Volumes unconformable — A pair of volumes are not conformable to each other. The takeover command terminates abnormally.

NG — The “no good” takeover command is rejected and the operation terminates abnormally.

PVOL-takeover — Executed from the P-VOL side. Gives the P-VOL read/write capability even if the S-VOL is unavailable with a fence level of data or status.

SVOL-takeover — Executed from the S-VOL side. Attempts to swap the P/S designations. If unable to swap the P/S designations, changes the SVOL to SVOL-SSUS mode. If unable to change the SVOL to SVOL-SSUS mode, changes the SVOL to SMPL mode to allow writes to the volume.

swap-takeover	Swaps the primary and secondary volume designations.
Unknown	The attribute of the remote node is unknown. This means that the remote node system has failed or cannot communicate.

Swap-takeover function

It is possible to swap the designations of the primary and secondary volumes when the P-VOL of the remote disk array is in the PAIR or PFUL (async-CA and over HWM) state and the mirror consistency of S-VOL data has been assured.

The takeover command carries out the commands internally to swap the designations of the primary and secondary volumes. You can specify swapping at the granularity of volume pair, CT group, or volume group.

Swap-takeover works differently according to microcode version:

XP256 microcode 52-47-xx and under
XP512/48 microcode 10-00-xx and under

1. The command splits the pair and puts each volume in the SMPL state.

   If this step fails, the swap-takeover function is disabled and the **SVOL-takeover** command executes.

2. The local volumes of the takeover node are paired in “No Copy” mode and switched to be the primary volume.

   If this step fails, step 1 repeats to cancel the operation of step 2, and the SVOL-takeover function is then executed.

   If step 1 fails again, the swap-takeover fails.

XP256 microcode 52-47-xx and over
XP512/48 microcode 10-00-xx and over
XP1024/128
XP12000

The swap-takeover function no longer uses “Simplex” and “No Copy” mode for swapping. This assures greater mirror consistency. Moreover, it is included as a function of SVOL-takeover.

1. The command orders a “suspend for swapping” (SSWS) for the local volume (S-VOL).

   If this step fails, the swap-takeover function is disabled and returns an error.

2. The command orders a “resync for swapping” to switch to the primary volume. The local volume (S-VOL) is swapped as the NEW_PVOL. The NEW_SVOL is resynchronized based on the NEW_PVOL.

   If the remote host is known, the command will use the value of P-VOL specified at **paircreate** time for the number of simultaneous copy tracks. If the remote host is unknown, the command will use a default of **3** simultaneous copy tracks for “resync for swapping.”

   If this step fails, the swap-takeover function is returned at SVOL-SSUS-takeover. The local volume (S-VOL) is maintained in the SSUS (PSUS) state which permits WRITE and maintenance of delta data (BITMAP) for the secondary volume. This special state is also displayed as the SSWS state, using the **–fc** option of the **pairdisplay** command.

Async-CA Extended Specific Behavior

XP256 microcode 52-47-xx and under
XP512/48 microcode 10-00-xx and under

1. The P-VOL side RM issues a **pairsplit** command to the P-VOL side disk array.
2. Non-transmitted data that remains in the FIFO queue (sidefile) of the P-VOL is copied to the S-VOL side.

3. The swap operation is performed.

   The swap operation must copy non-transmitted P-VOL data within the timeout value specified by the **–t** *timeout* option.

4. The swap command returns after the synchronization between the P-VOL and S-VOL.

XP256 microcode 52-47-xx and over
XP512/48 microcode 10-00-xx and over
XP1024/128
XP12000

1. The S-VOL side RM issues a “suspend for swapping” to the S-VOL side disk array.
2. Non-transmitted data that remains in the FIFO queue (sidefile) of the P-VOL is copied to the S-VOL side.
3. A “resync for swapping” operation is performed.

   The swap operation must copy non-transmitted P-VOL data within the timeout value specified by the **–t** *timeout* option.

SVOL-takeover function

This function enables the takeover node to have exclusive access to the S-VOL volume in SSUS (PSUS) state (reading and writing are enabled), except in COPY state, on the assumption that the remote node, controlling the P-VOL, is unavailable or unreadable.

The data consistency of the secondary volume is judged by its pair status and fence level. If the data consistency check fails, the SVOL-takeover function fails.

You can specify SVOL-takeover at the granularity of a paired logical volume or group.

If this check proves that the data is consistent, this function runs to switch to the primary volume using a Resync for Swapping. If this switch succeeds, this function returns with swap-takeover. Otherwise, this function

returns SVOL-SSUS-takeover as the return value of **horctakeover** command.

If there is a Host failure, this function returns as swap-takeover.

If an ESCON/FC link or P-VOL site failure occurs, this function returns as SVOL-SSUS-takeover.

If SVOL-takeover is specified for a group, the data consistency check executes for all volumes in the group. Inconsistent volumes are displayed in the execution log file.

Example

```
Group    Pair vol         Port    targ# lun# LDEV#...Volstat Status Fence  To be..
oradb1   /dev/dsk/hd001  CL1-A   1     5       145...S-VOL   PAIR   NEVER  Analyzed
oradb1   /dev/dsk/hd002  CL1-A   1     6       146...S-VOL   PSUS   STATUS Suspected
```

Async-CA extended specific behavior

The S-VOL side RM issues a suspend for swapping operation to the S-VOL side of the disk array. The non-transmitted data of the primary volume copies to the S-VOL side and a resync for swapping operation runs after the copy process.

If there is a host failure, this data-synchronize operation runs and the SVOL-takeover function returns as swap-takeover by running a resync for swapping operation.

If an ESCON/FC link or P-VOL site failure occurs, this data-synchronize operation could fail. Even so, the SVOL-takeover function performs a suspend for swapping operation and enables the secondary volume to be used. This function returns as SVOL-SSUS-takeover. The non-transmitted data of the primary volume is not transmitted completely when SVOL-takeover returns SVOL-SSUS-takeover.

The SVOL-takeover operation is required to copy non-transmitted P-VOL data within a given timeout value specified by the **–t** *timeout* option.

If the timeout occurs before S-VOL takeover has completed all S-VOL changes to the SSWS state, the **horctakeover** command fails with EX_EWSTOT.

PVOL-takeover function

The PVOL-takeover function terminates the PAIR state of a pair or group. The takeover node is given unrestricted and exclusive access to the primary volume (reading and writing are enabled), on the assumption that the remote node (controlling the S-VOL) is unavailable or unreachable.

The PVOL-takeover function has two roles:

- PVOL-PSUE-takeover puts the P-VOL into PSUE state, which permits “WRITE” access to all primary volumes of that group.
- PVOL-SMPL-takeover puts the P-VOL into SMPL state.

PVOL-takeover first attempts to use PVOL-PSUE-takeover. If PVOL-PSUE-takeover fails, then PVOL-SMPL-takeover is executed.

You can specify PVOL-takeover with a granularity of logical volume or group.

P-VOLs (primary volumes) in DATA fence will not accept write commands after ESCON/FC link or remote array failures. PVOL-takeover can be used on these P-VOLs to allow the application to update the P-VOL if you choose to do so. However, none of those updates will be replicated or mirrored to the remote S-VOL.

Async-CA specific behavior

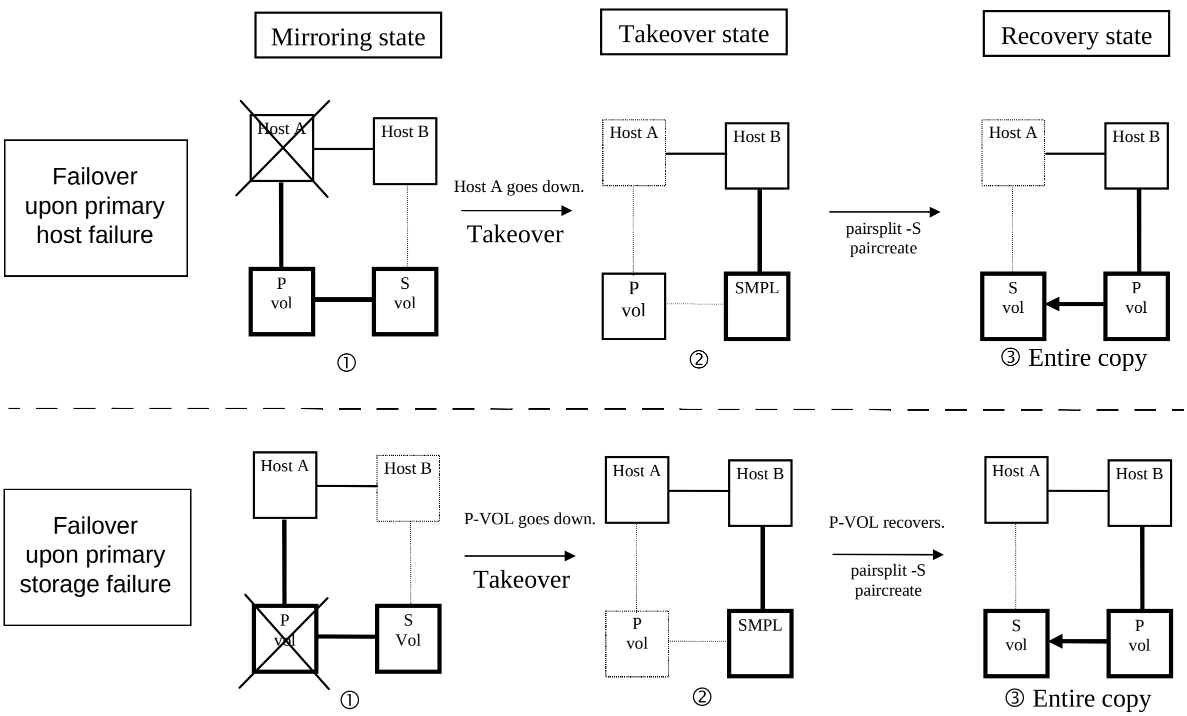
PVOL-takeover is not executed. It becomes a nop-takeover.

Recovery procedures of HA system configuration

After installing CA, the system administrator should conduct operation tests on the assumption that system failures may occur. In normal operation, service personnel obtain failure cause information from the SVP. However, the CA commands may also give error information.

XP256 microcode 52-47-xx and under
XP512/48 microcode 10-00-xx and under

The following figure shows a diagram of system failure and recovery.

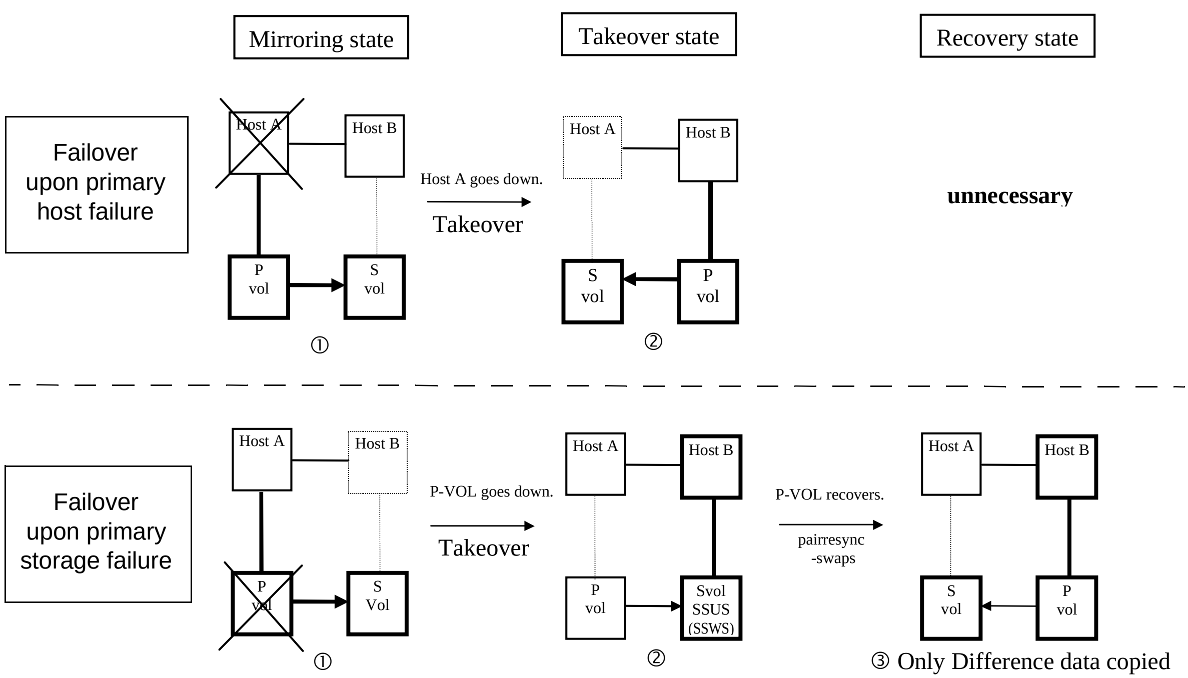


Scenario

1. A failure occurs in host A or in the P-VOL.

2. Host B detects the failure in host A and issues the takeover command to make the S-VOL usable. If the S-VOL can continue processing, host B takes over from host A and continues processing.
3. While host B is processing, the P-VOL and S-VOL can be swapped using full copy (**pairsplit –S**, **paircreate –vl**) and the data updated by host B is fed back to the new S-VOL, host A.
4. When host A recovers from the failure, host A takes over processing from host B through the **horctakeover swap-takeover** command.

XP256 microcode 52-47-xx and over
XP512/48 microcode 10-00-xx and over
XP1024/128
XP12000



Scenario

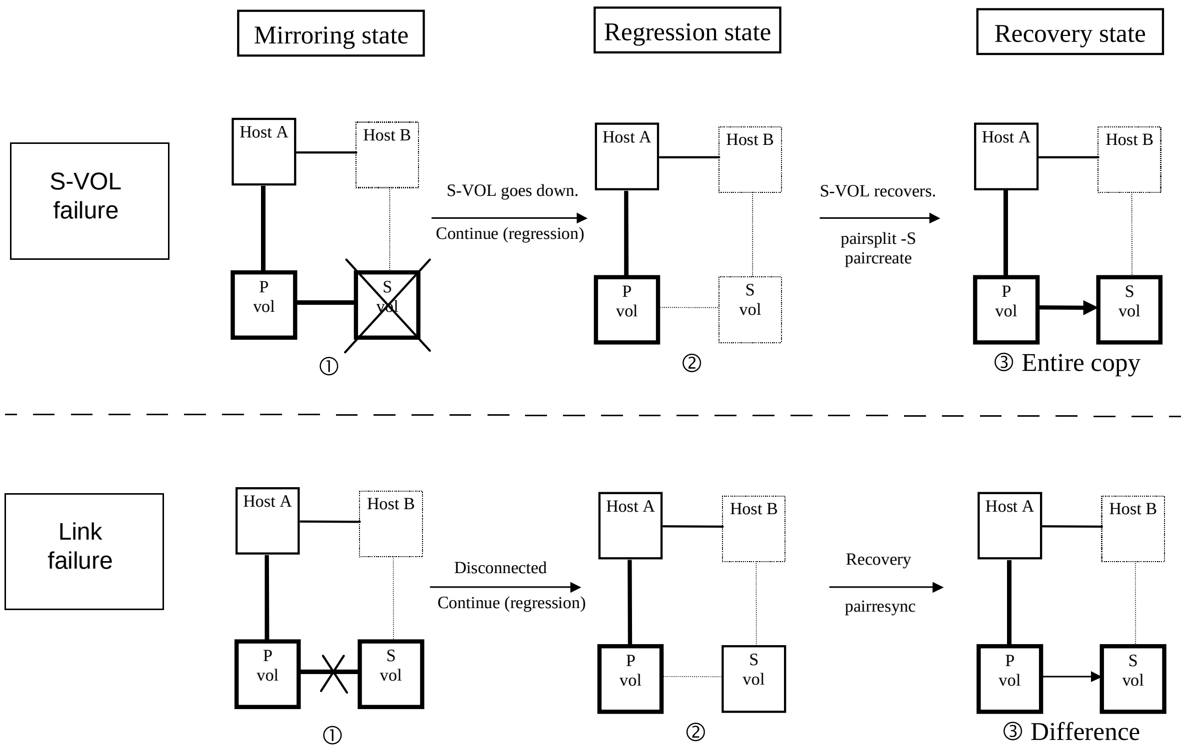
1. A failure occurs in host A or in the P-VOL.
2. Host B detects the failure in host A and issues the takeover command to make the S-VOL usable. Host B takes over from host A and continues processing.

   In the case of a host A failure, a takeover command executes a **swap-takeover**.

   In the case of a P-VOL failure, a takeover command executes a **S-VOL-SSUS-takeover**.
3. While host B is processing, the P-VOL and S-VOL are swapped using **pairresync –swaps** and the delta data (BITMAP) updated by host B is fed back to host A.
4. When host A recovers from the failure, host A takes over processing from host B through the **horctakeover swap-takeover** command.

Regression and recovery of CA

The figure below shows a diagram of regression and recovery where **horctakeover** is not needed.



Scenario

1. The P-VOL detects a failure in the S-VOL or the link and suspends mirroring. (It depends on the fence level whether host A continues processing or host B takes over processing from host A.)
2. The P-VOL changes its paired volume status to PSUE and keeps track of data changes in a difference bitmap. The CA manager detects the status change and outputs a message to syslog. If a host A user has initiated a monitoring command, a message is displayed on the client's screen.

3. The S-VOL or the link recovers from the failure. Host A issues the **pairsplit –S**, **paircreate –vl**, or **pairresync** command to update the P-VOL data by copying all data, or copying differential data only. The updated P-VOL is fed back to the S-VOL.

CA recovery procedures

Follow these steps to recover CA operations:

1. If an error occurs in writing paired volumes (for example, pair suspension), the server software using the volumes detects the error depending on the fence level of the paired volume.
2. Issue **pairdisplay** to the paired volume or group to get status information.
3. If necessary, issue the **horctakeover** command to recover P-VOL write access if the secondary volume fails and the primary is fenced (write inhibited).
4. If the primary volume fails, split or suspend the paired volume and use the secondary volume as the substitute volume.
5. Find out the reason why the pair was split. Repair or recover the failure and resynchronize your pairs immediately.

Abnormal termination

A CA command can abnormally terminate for many reasons, for example:

- The remote server is down.
- A local server failure.
- A disk array failure.
- The disappearance of the RM instance.

Check the system log file and RM log file to identify the cause.

If a command terminates abnormally because the remote server fails, recover the remote server, and then reissue the command. If the RM instance has disappeared, reactivate the RM instance. If you find failures

for which you can take no action, check the files in the log directory and contact HP.

Failure to activate the RAID Manager instance

The failure to activate RM on a new system can be caused by an incorrect environment setting and/or configuration file definition. Check the activation log file and take any necessary actions.

C

Fibre Channel addressing

This appendix provides Fibre Channel conversion tables for these operating systems:

- HP-UX
- Sun Solaris
- Microsoft Windows NT
- Microsoft Windows 2000
- Microsoft Windows 2003
- OpenVMS

Fibre Channel address conversions

RM converts the Fibre Channel physical address to a target ID using conversion tables presented on the following pages.

Fibre Channel TID

Type of Port	HP-UX and Other Windows NT/2000 (HP Fibre)		Sun Solaris		Windows NT/2000 (Emulex)	
	TID	LUN	TID	LUN	TID	LUN
Fibre	0 to 63	0 to 7	0 to 125	0 to 511	0 to 31	0 to 511
SCSI	0 to 15	0 to 7	0 to 15	0 to 7	0 to 15	0 to 7

HP-UX Fibre Channel address conversion

C0		C1		C2		C3		C4		C5		C6		C7	
AL PA	**TID**	**AL PA**	**TID**	**AL PA**	**TID**	**AL PA**	**TID**	**AL PA**	**TID**	**AL PA**	**TID**	**AL PA**	**TID**	**AL PA**	**TID**
EF	0	CD	0	B2	0	98	0	72	0	55	0	3A	0	25	0
E8	1	CC	1	B1	1	97	1	71	1	54	1	39	1	23	1
E4	2	CB	2	AE	2	90	2	6E	2	53	2	36	2	1F	2
E2	3	CA	3	AD	3	8F	3	6D	3	52	3	35	3	1E	3
E1	4	C9	4	AC	4	88	4	6C	4	51	4	34	4	1D	4
E0	5	C7	5	AB	5	84	5	6B	5	4E	5	33	5	1B	5
DC	6	C6	6	AA	6	82	6	6A	6	4D	6	32	6	18	6
DA	7	C5	7	A9	7	81	7	69	7	4C	7	31	7	17	7
D9	8	C3	8	A7	8	80	8	67	8	4B	8	2E	8	10	8
D6	9	BC	9	A6	9	7C	9	66	9	4A	9	2D	9	0F	9
D5	10	BA	10	A5	10	7A	10	65	10	49	10	2C	10	08	10
D4	11	B9	11	A3	11	79	11	63	11	47	11	2B	11	04	11
D3	12	B6	12	9F	12	76	12	5C	12	46	12	2A	12	02	12
D2	13	B5	13	9E	13	75	13	5A	13	45	13	29	13	01	13
D1	14	B4	14	9D	14	74	14	59	14	43	14	27	14		
CE	15	B3	15	9B	15	73	15	56	15	3C	15	26	15		

Sun Solaris Fibre Channel address conversion

C0		C1		C2		C3		C4		C5		C6		C7	
AL PA	**TID**	**AL PA**	**TID**	**AL PA**	**TID**	**AL PA**	**TID**	**AL PA**	**TID**	**AL PA**	**TID**	**AL PA**	**TID**	**AL PA**	**TID**
EF	0	CD	16	B2	32	98	48	72	64	55	80	3A	96	25	112
E8	1	CC	17	B1	33	97	49	71	65	54	81	39	97	23	113
E4	2	CB	18	AE	34	90	50	6E	66	53	82	36	98	1F	114
E2	3	CA	19	AD	35	8F	51	6D	67	52	83	35	99	1E	115
E1	4	C9	20	AC	36	88	52	6C	68	51	84	34	100	1D	116
E0	5	C7	21	AB	37	84	53	6B	69	4E	85	33	101	1B	117
DC	6	C6	22	AA	38	82	54	6A	70	4D	86	32	101	18	118
DA	7	C5	23	A9	39	81	55	69	71	4C	87	31	103	17	119
D9	8	C3	24	A7	40	80	56	67	72	4B	88	2E	104	10	120
D6	9	BC	25	A6	41	7C	57	66	73	4A	89	2D	105	0F	121
D5	10	BA	26	A5	42	7A	58	65	74	49	90	2C	106	08	122
D4	11	B9	27	A3	43	79	59	63	75	47	91	2B	107	04	123
D3	12	B6	28	9F	44	76	60	5C	76	46	92	2A	108	02	124
D2	13	B5	29	9E	45	75	61	5A	77	45	93	29	109	01	125
D1	14	B4	30	9D	46	74	62	59	78	43	94	27	110		
CE	15	B3	31	9B	47	73	63	56	79	3C	95	26	111		

Windows NT/2000 Fibre Channel address conversion (QLogic or Emulex driver)

PhId1(C1)				PhId2(C2)				PhId3(C3)				PhId4(C4)				PhId5(C5)			
AL PA	**TID**	**AL PA**	**TID**	**AL PA**	**TID**	**AL PA**	**TID**	**AL PA**	**TID**	**AL PA**	**TID**	**AL PA**	**TID**	**AL PA**	**TID**	**AL PA**	**TID**	**AL PA**	**TID**
		27	15			56	15			98	15			CC	15				
3C	30	26	14	72	30	55	14	B1	30	97	14	E4	30	CB	14				
3A	29	25	13	71	29	54	13	AE	29	90	13	E2	29	CA	13				
39	28	23	12	6E	28	53	12	AD	28	8F	12	E1	28	C9	12				
36	27	1F	11	6D	27	52	11	AC	27	88	11	E0	27	C7	11				
35	26	1E	10	6C	26	51	10	AB	26	84	10	DC	26	C6	10				
34	25	1D	9	6B	25	4E	9	AA	25	82	9	DA	25	C5	9				
33	24	1B	8	6A	24	4D	8	A9	24	81	8	D9	24	C3	8				
32	23	18	7	69	23	4C	7	A7	23	80	7	D6	23	BC	7				
31	22	17	6	67	22	4B	6	A6	22	7C	6	D5	22	BA	6				
2E	21	10	5	66	21	4A	5	A5	21	7A	5	D4	21	B9	5				
2D	20	0F	4	65	20	49	4	A3	20	79	4	D3	20	B6	4				
2C	19	08	3	63	19	47	3	9F	19	76	3	D2	19	B5	3				
2B	18	04	2	5C	18	46	2	9E	18	75	2	D1	18	B4	2				
2A	17	02	1	5A	17	45	1	9D	17	74	1	CE	17	B3	1			EF	1
29	16	01	1	59	16	43	0	9B	16	73	0	CD	16	B2	0			E8	0

The table above is based on the conversion method of the QLogic or Emulex driver. If a different driver is used for the Fibre Channel adapter on the server, the target ID displayed on Windows NT/2000 may be different from the target ID shown in the table. In this case, the target ID on the RM configuration file is required to describe the target ID that is indicated by the **raidscan** command.

D

STDIN file formats

This appendix provides the format specifications for the STDIN or device special files.

The STDIN or device special files are specified in the following formats:

MPE/iX	/dev/. . .
HP-UX	/dev/rdsk/*
Solaris	/dev/rdsk/*s2 or c*s2,
Linux	/dev/sd... or /dev/rd...
MPE/iX	/dev/..., "LDEV-"
AIX	/dev/rhdisk* or /dev/hdisk* or hdisk*
Digital or Tru64	/dev/rrz*c or /dev/rdisk/dsk*c
DYNIX	/dev/rdsk/sd* or sd*
	for only unpartitioned raw device
Windows NT	hdX-Y, $LETALL, $Phys, D:\DskX\pY, \DskX\pY
Windows2000/2003	hdX-Y,$LETALL,$Volume, $Phys,D:\Vol(Dms,Dmt,Dmr)X\DskY, \Vol(Dms,Dmt,Dmr)X\DskY
OpenVMS	1* or DK* or DG* or GK*

E

Porting notice for MPE/iX

This appendix describes operating system requirements, restrictions, and known issues for MPE/iX.

Porting notice for MPEiX

Introduction

MPE/iX does not fully support POSIX like UNIX. Therefore, RAID Manager has some restrictions in MPE/iX. The system calls (wait3(), gettimeofday()...) that are not supported on MPE/iX are implemented in LIB BSD; however, RM has to avoid using LIB BSD due to its availability as free software. These functions are, therefore, implemented within RM. RM has accomplished porting within standard POSIX for MPE/iX only.

Restrictions in the current release

RAID Manager has the following restrictions in porting to MPEiX.

Network function

The Bind() system call of MPE/iX POSIX cannot specify the Ip_address of its own host, so it supports only 'INADDR_ANY'. Therefore, RAID Manager needs to use **'NONE'** like the following on the horcm.conf. Also a port number over 1024 must be specified in '/etc/services'.

HORCM_MON

#ip_address	service	poll(10ms)	timeout(10ms)
NONE	horcm	1000	3000

Syslog function

RAID Manager does not support the syslog function of MPE/iX due to free software availability. Also, the syslog daemon (syslogd) does not execute at normal startup on MPE/iX. As an alternative, the HORCM daemon uses a logging file.

HORCM daemon startup

HORCM can start as a daemon process from a UNIX Shell. But in the case of MPE/iX, if a parent process exits, then any child process also dies at the same time. In other words, it looks like MPE/iX POSIX cannot launch a daemon process from a POSIX Shell. Therefore, horcmstart.sh has been changed to wait until HORCM has exited after startup of the horcmgr. According to the rules for MPE/iX, horcmstart.sh is run as a MPE JOB. The following is an example of a JOB control file named JRAIDMR1 (HORCMINST=1).

```
!job jraidmr1, manager.sys;pri=cs
!setvar TZ "PST8PDT"
!xeq sh.hpbin.sys '/HORCM/usr/bin/horcmstart.sh 1'
!eoj
```

When you execute this JOB in the background by using the **STREAM** command of MPE/iX, you will have the HORCM daemon running in the background. You will be able to verify that the HORCM daemon is running as a JOB by using the **SHOWJOB** command.

```
shell/iX> callci STREAM JRAIDMR1
 #J15
shell/iX> callci SHOWJOB
```

JOBNUM	STATE	IPRI	JIN	JLIST	INTRODUCED		JOB NAME
#J14	EXEC		10S	LP	WED	9:02P	JRAIDMR0,MANAGER.SYS
#J15	EXEC		10S	LP	WED	9:02P	JRAIDMR1,MANAGER.SYS
#S28	EXEC	QUIET	9	9	WED	9:10P	MANAGER.SYS

.

.

Command device

Because MPE/iX POSIX does not provide raw I/O such as UNIX, RAID manager has used the SCSI pass-thru driver to access the command device on XP256/512, and is also using the normal read/write SCSI commands for some RM control operations.

You need to confirm that MPE/iX has installed the patch MPEKXU3 before using the SCSI pass-thru driver

Installing

Since MPE/iX POSIX is unable to execute **cpio** to extract a file, the RM product is provided as a tar file.

For further information about installing RAID Manager on MPE/iX systems, see “Installing RAID Manager on MPE/iX systems” on page 31.

Uninstalling

The **RMuninst** (rm -rf /$instdir/HORCM) command cannot remove the directory (/HORCM/log*/curlog only) while the HORCM is running. → For more details, see the section “Cannot remove directories using the “rm -rf /users/HORCM” command on page 350.

The only way to remove the log directory for the **RMuninst** (rm -rf /$instdir /HORCM) command is to shut down and reboot the MPE system.

Use the **RMuninst** (rm -rf /$instdir/HORCM) command after the MPE/iX system has been shut down and rebooted.

-zx option for RAID Manager commands

The '-zx option' for RAID Manager commands uses the select() function to wait for an event from STDIN, but the MPE/iX POSIX select() function does not support that, and select() for terminal (STDIN) is unable to echo back the terminal input.

Therefore the '-zx option' for RAID Manager commands will not be supported, and it will be deleted as a displayed option.

MPE socket hang

One problem is that two or more packets are queued on the MPE socket, and then the packets remain on the socket indefinitely unless a shutdown of HORCM occurs due to select() is not woke-up.

As a result, the command using the remote host fails with EX_ENORMT on multiple commands.

This problem is resolved by **RM010904(3)**, which supports the traffic control method for MPE socket.

The traffic control method is to limit sending the packets for multiple commands at the same time, and over-packets are queued (FIFO) to wait until sending the next packets.The queued packets are sent after a reply is received for the sent message. This method controls the amount of packets that are sent to the remote host at the same time. The amount of packets are controlled by the **HORCMTRFCTL** environment variable for HORCM. The default for the amount of packets for MPE is one (HORCMTRFCTL=1).

HORCMTRFCTL is effective for all (other) platforms, but the default is not controlled (HORCMTRFCTL=0).

In **RM 1.09.02** or earlier, the following is needed to avoid this problem.

- Isolates RM instances with groups performing at the same time. This will isolate the message on the socket. A maximum number of RM instances are 32 on one command device. (In the case of NO RMLIB).
- Uses '-l' option (pairsplit -l, pairresync -l, pairevtwait -l) on PVOL instance. This will not use the remote RM instance except paircreate.

Known issues and concerns

MPE panic with the “rm” command

The MPE POSIX layer is unable to execute the **rm** command when the directory you are trying to remove is pointed to by a symbolic link. In /HORCM there is a symbolic link to /users/HORCM. While trying to remove the directory under this symbolic link (two levels down), it gets a nil pointer causing a system failure. This is entirely attributed to a POSIX bug and HP realizes that it is a critical bug that needs to be fixed soon; it has been submitted as an urgent request for a fix.

Display of the “dstat” command

DSTAT can only display up to 12 characters for the product-id.

shell/iX> callci dstat

LDEV-TYPE	STATUS	VOLUME	VOLUME SET - GEN
99-OPEN-3-CVS	UNKNOWN		
100-OPEN-3-CVS	MASTER	MEMBER100	PVOL100-0
101-OPEN-3-CVS	MASTER	MEMBER101	PVOL101-0
102-OPEN-3-CVS	MASTER	MEMBER102	PVOL102-0
103-OPEN-3-CVS-C	MASTER	MEMBER103	PVOL103-0

Regarding “multiple capability” of the SCSI path-thru driver

When other commands are executed via the SCSI path-thru driver, HORCM is blocked until the other commands have completed. If RAID Manager (the HORCM daemon) is blocked while sending raw I/O to the command device, then HORCM cannot work for another RM command.

Cannot remove directories using the “rm -rf /users/HORCM” command

You can change the “horcmstart.sh” script to avoid MPE panic with the **rm** command; however, there may be a new problem in that **rm -rf** cannot remove the log directories. The following are the results of **rm -rf /users/HORCM**:

```
rm -rf /users/HORCM

rm: cannot remove directory "/users/HORCM/log0/curlog":
Permission denied
rm: cannot remove directory "/users/HORCM/log0/tmplog":
Permission denied
rm: cannot remove directory "/users/HORCM/log1/curlog":
Permission denied
rm: cannot remove directory "/users/HORCM/log1/tmplog":
Permission denied
```

Here, the **rm** command is saying “Permission denied” but if the cause is really “Permission denied”, why does it remove the directory and files under the ‘/users/HORCM/log*/curlog’ directory?

MPE/iX POSIX commands can never remove these directories.

You cannot remove the ‘/tmp/curlog’ directory even if you use the **mv /users/HORCM/log*/curlog /tmp** command.

MPE/iX startup procedures

Make a JOB control file

The following is an example of JOB control file named JRAIDMR0 (HORCMINST=0).

```
!job jraidmr0, manager.sys;pri=cs
!setvar TZ "PST8PDT"
!xeq sh.hpbin.sys '/HORCM/usr/bin/horcmstart.sh 0'
!eoj
```

Make the device special files and check the LDEV configuration

You are able to use **"-inst"** option that is used to make a special file as **"/dev/ldev*"** from **"LDEV-"** of the **dstat** command for the SCSI pass-thru driver.

```
shell/iX> callci dstat | ./inqraid -inst -CLI
```

DEVICE_FILE	PORT	SERIAL	LDEV	CTG	C/B/12	SSID	R:Group	PRODUCT_ID
ldev100	CL1-L	35013	17	-	s/s/ss	0004	5:01-01	OPEN-3
ldev101	CL1-L	35013	18	-	s/s/ss	0004	5:01-01	OPEN-3
ldev102	CL1-L	35013	19	-	s/s/ss	0004	5:01-01	OPEN-3
ldev103	CL1-L	35013	35	-	-	-	-	OPEN-3-CM

Note: Ldev is ldev of MPE/iX term.

Describe the command device on /etc/horcm*.conf

```
HORCM_MON
#ip_address     service     poll(10ms)     timeout(10ms)
NONE            horcm       1000           3000

HORCM_CMD
#dev_name       dev_name       dev_name
/dev/ldev103

HORCM_DEV
#dev_group      dev_name       port#     TargetID   LU#   MU#

HORCM_INST
#dev_group      ip_address     service
```

You will have to start HORCM without a description for HORCM_DEV and HORCM_INST **because the target ID & LUN are Unknown.**

You will be able to know about mapping a physical device with a logical device (ldev of MPE/iX term) by using the 'raidscan -find' option.

Execute an “horcmstart.sh 0” as a JOB

```
shell/iX> callci STREAM JRAIDMR0
 #J14
shell/iX> callci SHOWJOB
```

JOBNUM	STATE	IPRI	JIN	JLIST	INTRODUCED	JOB NAME
#J14	EXEC		10S	LP	WED 9:02P	JRAIDMR0,MANAGER.SYS
#S28	EXEC	QUIET	9	9	WED 9:10P	MANAGER.SYS

.

.

Get a physical mapping of the LDEV (special device files)

```
shell/iX> export HORCMINST=0
shell/iX> callci dstat | raidscan -find
```

DEVICE_FILE	UID	S/F	PORT	TARG	LUN	SERIAL	LDEV	PRODUCT_ID
/dev/ldev100	0	S	CL1-L	0	1	35013	17	OPEN-3
/dev/ldev101	0	S	CL1-L	0	2	35013	18	OPEN-3
/dev/ldev102	0	S	CL1-L	0	3	35013	19	OPEN-3
/dev/ldev103	0	S	CL1-L	0	4	35013	35	OPEN-3-CM

Describe the known HORCM_DEV & HORCM_INST on /etc/horcm*.conf

HORCM_DEV

#dev_group	dev_name	port#	TargetID	LU#	MU#
DSG1	dsvol0	CL1-L	0	1	0
DSG1	dsvol1	CL1-L	0	2	0
DSG1	dsvol2	CL1-L	0	3	0

HORCM_INST

#dev_group	ip_address	service
DSG1	HOSTB	horcm1

Restart "horcmstart.sh 0" as a JOB

```
shell/iX> horcmshutdown.sh 0
inst 0:
HORCM Shutdown inst 0 !!!
shell/iX> callci STREAM JRAIDMR0
 #J17
shell/iX> callci SHOWJOB
```

JOBNUM	STATE	IPRI	JIN	JLIST	INTRODUCED	JOB NAME
#S28	EXEC		9	9	WED 9:10P	MANAGER.SYS
#J17	EXEC		10S	LP	WED 11:34P	JRAIDMR0,MANAGER.SYS

F

Porting notice for OpenVMS

This appendix covers specific operating system requirements, restrictions, and known issues for OpenVMS.

Porting notice for OpenVMS

Introduction

In OpenVMS, the system call on UNIX is supported by the CRTL (C Run Time Library) function. CRTL for OpenVMS does not fully support the POSIX and POSIX Shell, such as UNIX. Also, it is important to note that RM uses the UNIX domain socket for IPC (Inter Process Communication). OpenVMS does not support the AF_UNIX socket. As an alternative, RAID Manager achieves IPC between the RAID Manager command and HORCM daemon by using the Mailbox driver on OpenVMS.

RM has the following requirements and restrictions in porting for OpenVMS:

Requirements and restrictions

Version of OpenVMS

RM uses CRTL, and needs the following version to support the **ROOT directory** for POSIX:

- OpenVMS Version 7.3-1 or later
- **CRTL version must be installed prior to running RM** (Compaq C V6.5-001 was used in testing.)

Define the SYS$POSIX_ROOT

RM requires that the POSIX_ROOT is running on the system; therefore, you must define the **POSIX_ROOT** before running RAID Manager.

Example:

```
$ DEFINE/TRANSLATION=(CONCEALED,TERMINAL)
SYS$POSIX_ROOT "Device:[directory]"
```

Device:[**directory**] where defined as SYS$POSIX_ROOT

IPC method using MailBox driver

As an alternative method for the UNIX domain socket for IPC (Inter Process Communication), RAID Manager uses the mailbox driver to enable communication between the RAID Manager command and HORCM. Therefore, if the RAID Manager command and HORCM will be executing in different jobs (on a different terminal), then you must redefine **LNM$TEMPORARY_MAILBOX** in the **LNM$PROCESS_DIRECTORY** table as shown below.

```
$ DEFINE/TABLE=LNM$PROCESS_DIRECTORY
LNM$TEMPORARY_MAILBOX LNM$GROUP
```

HORCM daemon startup

HORCM can start as a daemon process from a UNIX Shell. However, in the case of 'vfork' of CRTL, if a parent process exits, then any child process also dies at the same time. In other words, it looks like OpenVMS cannot launch a daemon process from the POSIX program.

Therefore, horcmstart.exe has been changed to wait until HORCM has exited (by horcmshutdown.exe) after starting up horcmgr.

According to the rules for creating processes in OpenVMS, startup for horcmstart.exe is created as a detached process or Batch JOB by using the **DCL** command, as this method closely resembles the horcmd process on UNIX.

Using the detached process:

If you want to have the HORCM daemon running in the background, you will need to create the detached LOGINOUT.EXE process by using the **RUN /DETACHED** command of OpenVMS. You will also need to make the commands file for LOGINOUT.EXE.

The following are examples of the " loginhorcm*.com" file given to SYS$INPUT for LOGINOUT.EXE, showing that

"**VMS4$DKB100:[SYS0.SYSMGR.]**" was defined as SYS$POSIX_ROOT.

```
$ DEFINE/TRANSLATION=(CONCEALED,TERMINAL) SYS$POSIX_ROOT  "VMS4$DKB100:[SYS0.SYSMGR.]"
$ DEFINE DCL$PATH SYS$POSIX_ROOT: [horcm.usr.bin] ,SYS$POSIX_ROOT: [horcm.etc]
$ DEFINE/TABLE=LNM$PROCESS_DIRECTORY LNM$TEMPORARY_MAILBOX  LNM$GROUP
$ horcmstart 0
```

```
$ DEFINE/TRANSLATION=(CONCEALED,TERMINAL) SYS$POSIX_ROOT  "VMS4$DKB100:[SYS0.SYSMGR.]"
$ DEFINE DCL$PATH SYS$POSIX_ROOT: [horcm.usr.bin] ,SYS$POSIX_ROOT:[horcm.etc]
$ DEFINE/TABLE=LNM$PROCESS_DIRECTORY LNM$TEMPORARY_MAILBOX  LNM$GROUP
$ horcmstart 1
```

```
$ run /DETACHED SYS$SYSTEM:LOGINOUT.EXE /PROCESS_NAME=horcm0 -
_$ /INPUT=VMS4$DKB100:[SYS0.SYSMGR.][horcm]loginhorcm0.com -
_$ /OUTPUT=VMS4$DKB100:[SYS0.SYSMGR.][horcm]run0.out -
_$ /ERROR=VMS4$DKB100:[SYS0.SYSMGR.][horcm]run0.err
%RUN-S-PROC_ID, identification of created process is 00004160
$
$
$ run /DETACHED SYS$SYSTEM:LOGINOUT.EXE /PROCESS_NAME=horcm1 -
_$ /INPUT=VMS4$DKB100:[SYS0.SYSMGR.][horcm]loginhorcm1.com -
_$ /OUTPUT=VMS4$DKB100:[SYS0.SYSMGR.][horcm]run1.out -
_$ /ERROR=VMS4$DKB100:[SYS0.SYSMGR.][horcm]run1.err
%RUN-S-PROC_ID, identification of created process is 00004166
```

You will be able to verify that HORCM daemon is running as detached process by using the **SHOW PROCESS** command.

```
$ show process horcm0
```

```
25-MAR-2003 23:27:27.72 User: SYSTEM  Process ID:   00004160
                        Node: VMS4    Process name: "HORCM0"

Terminal:
User Identifier:    [SYSTEM]
Base priority:      4
Default file spec:  Not available
Number of Kthreads: 1

Soft CPU Affinity: off
$
$ horcmshutdown 0 1
inst 0:
HORCM Shutdown inst 0 !!!
inst 1:
HORCM Shutdown inst 1 !!!
$
```

Command device

Since OpenVMS does not provide the raw I/O device such as UNIX, RAID manager has used the SCSI Class driver to access the command device on the XP arrays, and is defining "DG* or DK*" as the logical name for the device.

You will need to define the Physical device as either DG* or DK* by using DEFINE/SYSTEM command.

Example: `$ show device`

Device Name	Device Status	Error Count	Volume Label	Free Blocks	Trans Count	Mnt Cnt
VMS4$DKB0:	Online	0				
VMS4$DKB100:	Mounted	0	ALPHASYS	30782220	414	1
VMS4$DKB200:	Online	0				
VMS4$DKB300:	Online	0				
VMS4$DQA0:	Online	0				
1DGA145: (VMS4)	**Online**	**0**				

```
$1$DGA146:    (VMS4)    Online    0
:
:
$1$DGA153:    (VMS4)    Online    0

$ DEFINE/SYSTEM DKA145  $1$DGA145:
$ DEFINE/SYSTEM DKA146  $1$DGA146:
:
:
$ DEFINE/SYSTEM DKA153  $1$DGA153:
```

-zx option for RAID Manager commands

The '-zx option' for RAID manager commands uses the select() function to wait for an event from STDIN; however, the OpenVMS select() function does not support this option, and the behavior of select() for terminal (STDIN) is unable to echo back the terminal input.

Therefore, the '-zx option' for RAID Manager commands will not be supported, and it will be deleted as a displayed option.

Syslog function

OpenVMS does not support the syslog function. Therefore, RAID Manager does not support the syslog function. As an alternative, the HORCM daemon uses the HORCM logging file.

Startup log files

When starting HORCM, RAID Manager does share a startup log file by two processes for startup; however, CRTL doesn't work correctly when sharing two processes.

As a workaround, RAID Manager has two startup log files, which are separated by using PID as follows.

For example under SYS$POSIX_ROOT:[HORCM.LOG*.CURLOG] directory:

```
HORCMLOG_VMS4  HORCM_VMS4_10530.LOG
HORCM_VMS4_10531.LOG
```

Option syntax and case sensitivity

OpenVMS users are not accustomed to commands being case sensitive and syntax of the option, like UNIX. Therefore, RAID Manager users need to change "case sensitivity" and "-xxx" syntax for options to match the expectations of VMS users as much as possible.

RAID Manager allows "**/xxx**" syntax for options as well as the "**-xxx**" option, but this will be minor option.

The following upper-case strings are not case sensitive.

```
-  DG* or DK* or Logical Device Name
-  -CLI or -FCA(-FHORC) or -FBC(-FMRCF) for the pair*
command options
-  -CLI or -CLIWP or -CLIWN or -CM for the inqraid
options
-  Environmental variable name such as HORCMINST …
controlled by CRTL
```

Define the following logical name in your login.com in order to distinguish uppercase and lowercase.

```
$ DEFINE DECC$ARGV_PARSE_STYLE ENABLE
$ SET PROCESS/PARSE_STYLE=EXTENDED
```

Using the spawn command

You can also start HORCM using the **spawn** command. The following show examples of using the **spawn** command on DCL.

Example

```
$ spawn /NOWAIT /PROCESS=horcm0 horcmstart 0
%DCL-S-SPAWNED, process HORCM0 spawned
$
    starting HORCM inst 0
$ spawn /NOWAIT /PROCESS=horcm1 horcmstart 1
```

```
%DCL-S-SPAWNED, process HORCM1 spawned
$
    starting HORCM inst 1
$
```

Note that the subprocess (HORCM) created by SPAWN will be terminated when the terminal will be LOGOFF or the session will be terminated. If you want an independent process to the terminal LOGOFF, then use the **RUN /DETACHED** command.

Privileges for using RAID Manager

- A user account for RAID Manager must have the same privileges as “SYSTEM” that can use the SCSI Class driver and Mailbox driver directly.

  However, some OpenVMS system administrators may not allow RAID Manager to run from the system account (equivalent to root on UNIX); therefore, RAID Manager recommends the creation of another account on the system, such as “RMadmin” that has the equivalent privileges to “SYSTEM.”
- RAID Manager uses the Mailbox driver to enable communication between the RAID Manager command and HORCM. So, the RAID Manager command and HORCM must have the same privileges.

  If the RAID Manager command and HORCM will be executing in different privileges (different user), then the RAID Manager command will hang or be unable to attach to HORCM because the RAID Manager command and HORCM will be denied the ability to communicate through the Mailbox.

Installing

RAID Manager will be provided with a file for installing the following PCSI (PolyCenter Software Installation) file:

HP-AXPVMS-RMXP-V0113-0-1.PCSI

RAID Manager also requires that the logical name **sys$posix_root** exist on the system. Therefore, you must define **sys$posix_root** before installing RAID Manager.

RAID Manager recommends that the three logical names shown below for RAID Manager in LOGIN.COM be defined prior to installation:

```
$ DEFINE/TRANSLATION=(CONCEALED,TERMINAL)
SYS$POSIX_ROOT  "Device:[directory]"
$ DEFINE DCL$PATH SYS$POSIX_ROOT:[horcm.usr.bin],
SYS$POSIX_ROOT:[horcm.etc]
$ DEFINE/TABLE=LNM$PROCESS_DIRECTORY
LNM$TEMPORARY_MAILBOX LNM$GROUP
$ DEFINE DECC$ARGV_PARSE_STYLE ENABLE
$ SET PROCESS/PARSE_STYLE=EXTENDED
```

Device:[directory] is defined as SYS$POSIX_ROOT.

To install RAID Manager:

```
$ PRODUCT INSTALL RMXP /source=Device:[directory]/LOG -
   _$ /destination=SYS$POSIX_ROOT:[000000]

Device:[directory] is where
HP-AXPVMS-RMXP-V0113-0-1.PCSI exists
:
:
$ PRODUCT SHOW PRODUCT RMXP

PRODUCT                    KIT TYPE      STATE
HP AXPVMS RMXP V1.12-0     Full LP         Installed

$ raidqry -h
Model  : Raid-Manager-XP/OpenVMS
Ver&Rev: 01.12.00
:
:
```

To obtain the installation history:

```
$ PRODUCT SHOW HISTORY RMXP /FULL
```

To uninstall RAID Manager:

```
$ PRODUCT REMOVE RMXP /LOG
```

Known issues and concerns

Rebooting on PAIR state (writing disabled)

OpenVMS does not show the volumes of writing disable (e.g. SVOL_PAIR) at system startup; therefore, the SVOLs are hidden when rebooting in PAIR state or SUSPEND (read-only) mode.

You are able to verify that the **show device** and **inqraid** commands do not show the SVOLs after reboot as below (notice that **DGA148** and **DGA150** devices are SVOL_PAIR).

```
$ sh dev dg
```

Device Name	Device	Status	Error Count	Volume Free	Trans Mnt
				Label	Blocks Count Cnt
1DGA145:	(VMS4)	Online	0		
1DGA146:	(VMS4)	Online	0		
1DGA147:	(VMS4)	Online	0		
1DGA149:	(VMS4)	Online	0		
1DGA151:	(VMS4)	Online	0		
1DGA152:	(VMS4)	Online	0		
1DGA153:	(VMS4)	Online	0		

```
$ inqraid DKA145-153 -cli
```

DEVICE_FILE	PORT	SERIAL	LDEV	CTG	C/B/12	SSID	R:Group	PRODUCT_ID
DKA145	CL1-H	30009	145	-	-	-	-	OPEN-9-CM
DKA146	CL1-H	30009	146	-	s/P/ss	0004	5:01-11	OPEN-9
DKA147	CL1-H	30009	147	-	s/S/ss	0004	5:01-11	OPEN-9
DKA148	-	-	-	-	-	-	- -	
DKA149	CL1-H	30009	149	-	P/s/ss	0004	5:01-11	OPEN-9

DKA150	-	-	-	-	-	-	- -	
DKA151	CL1-H	30009	151	-	P/s/ss	0004	5:01-11	OPEN-9
DKA152	CL1-H	30009	152	-	s/s/ss	0004	5:01-11	OPEN-9
DKA153	CL1-H	30009	153	-	s/s/ss	0004	5:01-11	OPEN-9

```
$ inqraid DKA148
sys$assign : DKA148 -> errcode = 2312
DKA148 -> OPEN: no such device or address
```

After enabling the SVOL for writing by using either the **pairsplit** or **horctakeover** command, you will need to perform the **mcr sysman** command to use the SVOLs for back-up or disaster recovery.

```
  $ pairsplit -g CAVG -rw
$ mcr sysman
  SYSMAN> io auto
  SYSMAN> exit
```

$ sh dev dg

Device Name		Device Status	Error Count	Volume Label	Free Blocks	Trans Count	Mnt Cnt
1DGA145:	(VMS4)	Online	0				
1DGA146:	(VMS4)	Online	0				
1DGA147:	(VMS4)	Online	0				
1DGA148:	(VMS4)	Online	0				
1DGA149:	(VMS4)	Online	0				
1DGA150:	(VMS4)	Online	0				
1DGA151:	(VMS4)	Online	0				
1DGA152:	(VMS4)	Online	0				
1DGA153:	(VMS4)	Online	0				

Startup procedures using detached process on DCL

Creates the shareable logical name for RAID if undefined initially. RAID Manager needs to define the physical device (**`$1$DGA145`…**) as either DG* or DK* by using the **SHOW DEVICE** command and the **DEFINE/SYSTEM** command, but then does not need to be mounted.

```
$ show device
```

Device Name		Device Status	Error Count	Volume Label	Free Blocks	Trans Count	Mnt Cnt
1DGA145:	(VMS4)	Online	0				
1DGA146:	(VMS4)	Online	0				
:							
:							
1DGA153:	(VMS4)	Online	0				
$							

```
$ DEFINE/SYSTEM DKA145 $1$DGA145:
$ DEFINE/SYSTEM DKA146 $1$DGA146:
:
:
$ DEFINE/SYSTEM DKA153 $1$DGA153:
```

Defines the environment for RAID Manager in LOGIN.COM

You need to define the path for the RAID Manager commands to **DCL$PATH** as the foreign command.

Refer to section "12.14 Automatic Foreign Commands" on OpenVMS User's manual.

```
$ DEFINE DCL$PATH
SYS$POSIX_ROOT:[horcm.usr.bin],SYS$POSIX_ROOT:
[horcm.etc]
```

If the RAID Manager command and HORCM will be executing in different jobs (using a different terminal), then you must redefine **LNM$TEMPORARY_MAILBOX** in the LNM$PROCESS_DIRECTORY table as shown below:

```
  $ DEFINE/TABLE=LNM$PROCESS_DIRECTORY
LNM$TEMPORARY_MAILBOX LNM$GROUP
```

Discovers and describes the command device on sys$posix_root:[etc]horcm0.conf

```
 $ inqraid DKA145-151 -CLI
```

DEVICE_FILE	PORT	SERIAL	LDEV	CTG	C/B/12	SSID	R:Group	PRODUCT_ID
DKA145	CL1-H	30009	145	-	-	-	-	OPEN-9-CM
DKA146	CL1-H	30009	146	-	s/S/ss	0004	5:01-11	OPEN-9
DKA147	CL1-H	30009	147	-	s/P/ss	0004	5:01-11	OPEN-9
DKA148	CL1-H	30009	148	-	s/S/ss	0004	5:01-11	OPEN-9
DKA149	CL1-H	30009	149	-	s/P/ss	0004	5:01-11	OPEN-9
DKA150	CL1-H	30009	150	-	s/S/ss	0004	5:01-11	OPEN-9
DKA151	CL1-H	30009	151	-	s/P/ss	0004	5:01-11	OPEN-9

```
SYS$POSIX_ROOT:[etc]horcm0.conf
HORCM_MON
```

```
#ip_address     service     poll(10ms)    timeout(10ms)
127.0.0.1       30001       1000          3000

HORCM_CMD
#dev_name       dev_name       dev_name
DKA145
```

You will have to start HORCM without a description for HORCM_DEV and HORCM_INST **because target ID & Lun are Unknown.**

You will be able to know about the mapping of a physical device with a logical name by using the **raidscan -find** command option.

Executes a "horcmstart 0"

```
$ run /DETACHED SYS$SYSTEM:LOGINOUT.EXE
   /PROCESS_NAME=horcm0 -
_$  /INPUT=VMS4$DKB100:[SYS0.SYSMGR.][horcm]
   loginhorcm0.com -
_$ /OUTPUT=VMS4$DKB100:[SYS0.SYSMGR.][horcm]run0.out -
_$ /ERROR=VMS4$DKB100:[SYS0.SYSMGR.][horcm]run0.err
%RUN-S-PROC_ID, identification of created process is
00004160
```

Verifies a physical mapping of the logical device

```
$ HORCMINST := 0
$ raidscan -pi DKA145-151 -find
```

DEVICE_FILE	UID	S/F	PORT	TARG	LUN	SERIAL	LDEV	PRODUCT_ID
DKA145	0	F	CL1-H	0	1	30009	145	OPEN-9-CM
DKA146	0	F	CL1-H	0	2	30009	146	OPEN-9
DKA147	0	F	CL1-H	0	3	30009	147	OPEN-9
DKA148	0	F	CL1-H	0	4	30009	148	OPEN-9
DKA149	0	F	CL1-H	0	5	30009	149	OPEN-9
DKA150	0	F	CL1-H	0	6	30009	150	OPEN-9
DKA151	0	F	CL1-H	0	7	30009	151	OPEN-9

```
$ horcmshutdown 0
inst 0:
HORCM Shutdown inst 0 !!!
```

Describes the known HORCM_DEV on sys$posix_root:[etc]horcm*.conf

FOR horcm0.conf
HORCM_DEV

#dev_group	dev_name	port#	TargetID	LU#	MU#
VG01	oradb1	CL1-H	0	2	0
VG01	oradb2	CL1-H	0	4	0
VG01	oradb3	CL1-H	0	6	0

HORCM_INST

#dev_group	ip_address	service
VG01	HOSTB	horcm1

FOR horcm1.conf

HORCM_DEV

#dev_group	dev_name	port#	TargetID	LU#	MU#
VG01	oradb1	CL1-H	0	3	0
VG01	oradb2	CL1-H	0	5	0
VG01	oradb3	CL1-H	0	7	0

HORCM_INST

#dev_group	ip_address	service
VG01	HOSTA	horcm0

NOTE:
Defines the UDP port name for HORCM communication in **"SYS$SYSROOT:[000000.TCPIP$ETC]SERVICES.DAT"** file as example belows.

```
horcm0      30001/udp
horcm1      30002/udp
```

Starts "horcm 0" and "horcm 1" as the detached process

```
$ run /DETACHED SYS$SYSTEM:LOGINOUT.EXE
    /PROCESS_NAME=horcm0 -
_$ /INPUT=VMS4$DKB100:[SYS0.SYSMGR.][horcm]
    loginhorcm0.com -
_$ /OUTPUT=VMS4$DKB100:[SYS0.SYSMGR.][horcm]run0.out -
_$ /ERROR=VMS4$DKB100:[SYS0.SYSMGR.][horcm]run0.err
%RUN-S-PROC_ID, identification of created process is
00004160
$
$
$ run /DETACHED SYS$SYSTEM:LOGINOUT.EXE
    /PROCESS_NAME=horcm1 -
_$ /INPUT=VMS4$DKB100:[SYS0.SYSMGR.][horcm]
   loginhorcm1.com -
_$ /OUTPUT=VMS4$DKB100:[SYS0.SYSMGR.][horcm]run1.out -
_$ /ERROR=VMS4$DKB100:[SYS0.SYSMGR.][horcm]run1.err
%RUN-S-PROC_ID, identification of created process is
00004166
```

You will be able to verify that HORCM daemon is running as a detached process by using the **SHOW PROCESS** command.

```
$ show process horcm0

25-MAR-2003 23:27:27.72  User: SYSTEM   Process ID:   00004160
                         Node: VMS4      Process name: "HORCM0"

Terminal:
User Identifier:    [SYSTEM]
Base priority:      4
Default file spec:  Not available
Number of Kthreads: 1

Soft CPU Affinity: off
```

Command examples on DCL

1. Setting the environment variable by using symbol:

```
$ HORCMINST := 0
$ HORCC_MRCF := 1
$ raidqry -l
No Group  Hostname   HORCM_ver  Uid  Serial#   Micro_ver  Cache(MB)
  1  ---      VMS4       01.12.00       0    30009    21-04-04/00   8192
$
$ pairdisplay -g VG01 -fdc
```

Group	PairVol(L/R)	Device_File	M	Seq#	LDEV #	Status	%	P-LDEV#	M
VG01	oradb1(L)	DKA146	0	30009	146..	S-VOL PAIR,	100	147	-
VG01	oradb1(R)	DKA147	0	30009	147..	P-VOL PAIR,	100	146	-
VG01	oradb2(L)	DKA148	0	30009	148..	S-VOL PAIR,	100	149	-
VG01	oradb2(R)	DKA149	0	30009	149..	P-VOL PAIR,	100	148	-
VG01	oradb3(L)	DKA150	0	30009	150..	S-VOL PAIR,	100	151	-
VG01	oradb3(R)	DKA151	0	30009	151..	P-VOL PAIR,	100	150	-

2. Removing the environment variable:

```
$ DELETE/SYMBOL HORCC_MRCF
$ pairdisplay -g VG01 -fdc
```

Group	PairVol (L/R)	Device_File	,Seq# ,	LDEV#	.P/S,	Status,	Fence,	%	,P-LDEV#	M
VG01	oradb1(L)	DKA146	30009	146..	SMPL	----	------,	-----	----	-
VG01	oradb1(R)	DKA147	30009	147..	SMPL	----	------,	-----	----	-
VG01	oradb2(L)	DKA148	30009	148..	SMPL	----	------,	-----	----	-
VG01	oradb2(R)	DKA149	30009	149..	SMPL	----	------,	-----	----	-
VG01	oradb3(L)	DKA150	30009	150..	SMPL	----	------,	-----	----	-
VG01	oradb3(R)	DKA151	30009	151..	SMPL	----	------,	-----	----	-

$

3. Changing the default log directory:

```
$ HORCC_LOG := /horcm/horcm/TEST
$ pairdisplay
PAIRDISPLAY: requires '-x xxx' as argument
PAIRDISPLAY: [EX_REQARG] Required Arg list
Refer to the command log
(SYS$POSIX_ROOT:[HORCM.HORCM.TEST]HORCC_VMS4.LOG
(/HORCM
/HORCM/TEST/horcc_VMS4.log)) for details.
```

4. Turn back to the default log directory

```
$ DELETE/SYMBOL HORCC_LOG
```

5. Specifying the device described in scandev.LIS

```
$ define dev_file SYS$POSIX_ROOT:[etc]SCANDEV
$ type dev_file
DKA145-150
$
```

```
$ pipe type dev_file | inqraid -CLI
```

DEVICE_FILE	PORT	SERIAL	LDEV	CTG	C/B/12	SSID	R:Group	PRODUCT_ID
DKA145	CL1-H	30009	145	-	-	-	-	OPEN-9-CM
DKA146	CL1-H	30009	146	-	s/S/ss	0004	5:01-11	OPEN-9
DKA147	CL1-H	30009	147	-	s/P/ss	0004	5:01-11	OPEN-9
DKA148	CL1-H	30009	148	-	s/S/ss	0004	5:01-11	OPEN-9
DKA149	CL1-H	30009	149	-	s/P/ss	0004	5:01-11	OPEN-9
DKA150	CL1-H	30009	150	-	s/S/ss	0004	5:01-11	OPEN-9

6. Making the configuration file automatically:

You will be able to omit steps 3 to 6 on startup by using the **mkconf** command.

```
$ type dev_file
DKA145-150
$
$ pipe type dev_file | mkconf -g URA -i 9
starting HORCM inst 9
HORCM Shutdown inst 9 !!!
```

A CONFIG file was successfully completed.
HORCM inst 9 finished successfully.
starting HORCM inst 9

DEVICE_FILE	Group	PairVol	PORT	TARG	LUN	M	SERIAL	LDEV
DKA145	-	-	-	-	-	-	30009	145
DKA146	URA	URA_000	CL1-H	0	2	0	30009	146
DKA147	URA	URA_001	CL1-H	0	3	0	30009	147
DKA148	URA	URA_002	CL1-H	0	4	0	30009	148
DKA149	URA	URA_003	CL1-H	0	5	0	30009	149
DKA150	URA	URA_004	CL1-H	0	6	0	30009	150

HORCM Shutdown inst 9 !!!
Please check

```
'SYS$SYSROOT:[SYSMGR]HORCM9.CONF','SYS$SYSROOT:[SYSM
GR.LOG9.CURLOG]
HORCM_*.LOG', and modify 'ip_address & service'.
HORCM inst 9 finished successfully.
$

SYS$SYSROOT:[SYSMGR]horcm9.conf
(/sys$sysroot/sysmgr/horcm9.conf)

# Created by mkconf on Thu Mar 13 20:08:41

HORCM_MON

#ip_address     service     poll(10ms)     timeout(10ms)
127.0.0.1        52323        1000           3000

HORCM_CMD
#dev_name          dev_name          dev_name
#UnitID 0 (Serial# 30009)
DKA145

# ERROR [CMDDEV] DKA145   SER =   30009  LDEV =  145
[OPEN-9-CM  `

HORCM_DEV
#dev_group      dev_name      port#    TargetID    LU#    MU#
# DKA146          SER =   30009  LDEV =  146 [ FIBRE FCTBL = 3 ]
URA           URA_000      CL1-H        0      2      0
# DKA147          SER =   30009  LDEV =  147 [ FIBRE FCTBL = 3 ]
URA           URA_001      CL1-H        0      3      0
# DKA148          SER =   30009  LDEV =  148 [ FIBRE FCTBL = 3 ]
URA           URA_002      CL1-H        0      4      0
# DKA149          SER =   30009  LDEV =  149 [ FIBRE FCTBL = 3 ]
URA           URA_003      CL1-H        0      5      0
# DKA150          SER =   30009  LDEV =  150 [ FIBRE FCTBL = 3 ]
URA           URA_004      CL1-H        0      6      0

HORCM_INST
#dev_group      ip_address     service
URA           127.0.0.1      52323
```

(7) Using 1* naming as native device name

You can to use the native device without the DEFINE/SYSTEM command by specifying 1* naming directly.

Examples

```
$ inqraid $1$DGA145-155 -CLI

DEVICE_FILE     PORT    SERIAL  LDEV CTG  C/B/12  SSID R:Group PRODUCT_ID
$1$DGA145       CL2-H    30009   145   -       -     -       - OPEN-9-CM
$1$DGA146       CL2-H    30009   146   -  s/P/ss  0004 5:01-11 OPEN-9
$1$DGA147       CL2-H    30009   147   -  s/S/ss  0004 5:01-11 OPEN-9
$1$DGA148       CL2-H    30009   148   0  P/s/ss  0004 5:01-11 OPEN-9

$ pipe show device   | INQRAID -CLI

DEVICE_FILE     PORT    SERIAL  LDEV CTG  C/B/12  SSID R:Group PRODUCT_ID
$1$DGA145       CL2-H    30009   145   -       -     -       - OPEN-9-CM
$1$DGA146       CL2-H    30009   146   -  s/P/ss  0004 5:01-11 OPEN-9
$1$DGA147       CL2-H    30009   147   -  s/S/ss  0004 5:01-11 OPEN-9
$1$DGA148       CL2-H    30009   148   0  P/s/ss  0004 5:01-11 OPEN-9

$ pipe show device   | MKCONF -g URA -i 9

starting HORCM inst 9
HORCM Shutdown inst 9 !!!
A CONFIG file was successfully completed.
HORCM inst 9 finished successfully.
starting HORCM inst 9
DEVICE_FILE             Group    PairVol     PORT   TARG  LUN M   SERIAL
LDEV
$1$DGA145              -        -           -        -     - -    30009   145
$1$DGA146              URA      URA_000     CL2-H    0     2 0    30009   146
$1$DGA147              URA      URA_001     CL2-H    0     3 0    30009   147
$1$DGA148              URA      URA_002     CL2-H    0     4 0    30009   148
HORCM Shutdown inst 9 !!!
Please check 'SYS$SYSROOT:[SYSMGR]HORCM9.CONF',
'SYS$SYSROOT:[SYSMGR.LOG9.CURLOG]
HORCM_*.LOG', and modify 'ip_address & service'.
HORCM inst 9 finished successfully.
$

$ pipe show device   | RAIDSCAN -find
```

```
DEVICE_FILE          UID  S/F PORT   TARG  LUN    SERIAL  LDEV  PRODUCT_ID
$1$DGA145              0   F  CL2-H     0    1     30009   145  OPEN-9-CM
$1$DGA146              0   F  CL2-H     0    2     30009   146  OPEN-9
$1$DGA147              0   F  CL2-H     0    3     30009   147  OPEN-9
$1$DGA148              0   F  CL2-H     0    4     30009   148  OPEN-9

$ pairdisplay -g BCVG -fdc

Group   PairVol(L/R) Device_File   M  ,Seq#,LDEV#..P/S,Status,% ,P-LDEV# M
BCVG    oradb1(L)    $1$DGA146      0  30009   146..P-VOL PAIR, 100     147 -
BCVG    oradb1(R)    $1$DGA147      0  30009   147..S-VOL PAIR, 100     146 -
$

$ pairdisplay -dg $1$DGA146

Group  PairVol(L/R)(Port#,TID, LU-M),Seq#,LDEV#..P/S,Status,Seq#,P-LDEV# M
BCVG   oradb1(L)   (CL1-H , 0,  2-0 )30009   146..P-VOL PAIR,30009  147 -
BCVG   oradb1(R)   (CL1-H , 0,  3-0 )30009   147..S-VOL PAIR,-----  146 -
$
```

Startup procedures on bash

RAID Manager is not recommended for use with **bash** because **bash** is not provided as an official release in some versions of OpenVMS.

Creates the shareable logical name for RAID if undefined initially

You need to define the physical device **(1DGA145…)** as either DG* or DK* by using the **SHOW DEVICE** command and the **DEFINE/SYSTEM** command, but then it does not need to be mounted.

$ show device

```
Device           Device      Error   Volume       Free  Trans Mnt
Name              Status      Count    Label      Blocks Count Cnt
$1$DGA145:     (VMS4)  Online        0
$1$DGA146:     (VMS4)  Online        0
:
:
$1$DGA153:     (VMS4)  Online        0
```

$
$ DEFINE/SYSTEM DKA145 1DGA145:
$ DEFINE/SYSTEM DKA146 1DGA146:
:
:
$ DEFINE/SYSTEM DKA153 1DGA153:

Defines the environment for RAID Manager in LOGIN.COM

If the RAID Manager command and HORCM will be executing in different jobs (on a different terminal), then you must redefine **LNM$TEMPORARY_MAILBOX** in the LNM$PROCESS_DIRECTORY table, as shown below:

```
  $ DEFINE/TABLE=LNM$PROCESS_DIRECTORY
LNM$TEMPORARY_MAILBOX LNM$GROUP
```

Discovers and describes the command device on /etc/horcm0.conf

bash$ inqraid DKA145-151 -CLI

DEVICE_FILE	PORT	SERIAL	LDEV	CTG	C/B/12	SSID	R:Group	PRODUCT_ID
DKA145	CL1-H	30009	145	-	-	-	-	OPEN-9-CM
DKA146	CL1-H	30009	146	-	s/S/ss	0004	5:01-11	OPEN-9
DKA147	CL1-H	30009	147	-	s/P/ss	0004	5:01-11	OPEN-9
DKA148	CL1-H	30009	148	-	s/S/ss	0004	5:01-11	OPEN-9
DKA149	CL1-H	30009	149	-	s/P/ss	0004	5:01-11	OPEN-9
DKA150	CL1-H	30009	150	-	s/S/ss	0004	5:01-11	OPEN-9
DKA151	CL1-H	30009	151	-	s/P/ss	0004	5:01-11	OPEN-9

/etc/horcm0.conf

HORCM_MON

```
#ip_address      service      poll(10ms)     timeout(10ms)
127.0.0.1         52000         1000            3000
```

```
HORCM_CMD
#dev_name        dev_name       dev_name
DKA145

HORCM_DEV
#dev_group       dev_name       port#     TargetID   LU#   MU#

HORCM_INST
#dev_group       ip_address     service
```

You will have to start HORCM without a description for HORCM_DEV and HORCM_INST **because the target ID and LUN are unknown.**

You will be able to know about a mapping of a physical device with a logical name easily by using the **raidscan -find** command option.

Executes "horcmstart 0" as background

```
bash$ horcmstart 0 &
18
bash$
    starting HORCM inst 0
```

Verifies a physical mapping of the logical device

```
bash$ export HORCMINST=0
bash$ raidscan -pi DKA145-151 -find
```

DEVICE_FILE	UID	S/F	PORT	TARG	LUN	SERIAL	LDEV	PRODUCT_ID
DKA145	0	F	CL1-H	0	1	30009	145	OPEN-9-CM
DKA146	0	F	CL1-H	0	2	30009	146	OPEN-9
DKA147	0	F	CL1-H	0	3	30009	147	OPEN-9
DKA148	0	F	CL1-H	0	4	30009	148	OPEN-9
DKA149	0	F	CL1-H	0	5	30009	149	OPEN-9
DKA150	0	F	CL1-H	0	6	30009	150	OPEN-9
DKA151	0	F	CL1-H	0	7	30009	151	OPEN-9

Describes the known HORCM_DEV on /etc/horcm*.conf

FOR horcm0.conf
HORCM_DEV

#dev_group	dev_name	port#	TargetID	LU#	MU#
VG01	oradb1	**CL1-H**	**0**	**2**	0
VG01	oradb2	**CL1-H**	**0**	**4**	0
VG01	oradb3	**CL1-H**	**0**	**6**	0

HORCM_INST

#dev_group	ip_address	service
VG01	HOSTB	horcm1

FOR horcm1.conf
HORCM_DEV

#dev_group	**dev_name**	**port#**	**TargetID**	**LU#**	**MU#**
VG01	oradb1	CL1-H	0	3	0
VG01	oradb2	CL1-H	0	5	0
VG01	oradb3	CL1-H	0	7	0

HORCM_INST

#dev_group	ip_address	service
VG01	HOSTA	horcm0

Starts "horcmstart 0 1"

Note that the subprocess (HORCM) created by bash will be terminated when the bash will be EXIT.

```
bash$ horcmstart 0 &
19
bash$
      starting HORCM inst 0
bash$ horcmstart 1 &
20
bash$
      starting HORCM inst 1
```

Glossary

ACA	HP StorageWorks Asynchronous Continuous Access XP.
ACP	Array Control Processor. The ACP handles passing data between cache and the physical drives. ACPs work in pairs. In the event of an ACP failure, the redundant ACP takes control. Both ACPs work together sharing the load.
AL	Arbitrated loop.
AL-PA	Arbitrated loop physical address
allocation	The ratio of allocated storage capacity versus total capacity as a percentage. “Allocated storage” refers to those LDEVs that have paths assigned to them. Allocated storage capacity is the sum of the storage of these LDEVs. Total capacity is the sum of the capacity of all LDEVs on the array.
array group	The number of physical disk drives contained in a RAID group. This number depends on the RAID configuration. For example, there may be two or four physical disks in a RAID1 group. There are four or eight physical disks in a RAID5 group.
BC	HP StorageWorks Business Copy XP. BC lets you maintain up to nine internal copies of logical volumes on the disk array.
CA	HP StorageWorks Continuous Access XP. CA lets you create and maintain duplicate copies of logical volumes on a remote disk array.
cache	Very high speed memory used to speed I/O transaction time. All reads and writes to the array are sent to the cache. The data is buffered there until the transfer to/from physical disks (with slower data throughput) is complete. Cache memory speeds I/O throughput to the application.
CE	Customer engineer.

CFW	Cache fast write.
CH	Channel.
CHA (channel adapter)	The channel adapter (CHA) provides the interface between the disk array and the external host system. Occasionally this term is used synonymously with the term channel host interface processor (CHIP)
CHIP (channel host interface processor)	Synonymous with the term channel adapter (CHA).
CHP (channel processor)	The processor(s) located on the channel adapter (CHA).
CHPID	Channel path identifier.
CKD	Count key data.
CLI	Command line interface.
command device	A volume on the disk array that accepts CA or BC control operations, which are then executed by the disk array.
Command View	HP StorageWorks Command View XP. A software product used for managing XP arrays.
configuration file	A file that defines the pair configurations.
CTGID (consistency group ID)	The group identifier for which the disk array guarantees the sequence of asynchronous data transfer for the asynchronous CA volume group.
control unit (CU)	To organize the storage space attached, you can group similarly configured logical devices (LDEVs) with unique control unit images (CUs). CUs are numbered sequentially. An LDEV requires both a CU number and an LDEV number to identify it.
CU	control unit.
CVS	CVS devices (OPEN-x CVS) are custom volumes that are smaller than normal fixed-sized logical disk devices (volumes). They are created using the Volume Size Configuration configuration of Command View XP or LUN Configuration Manager XP.

disk group	The physical disk locations associated with a parity group.
disk type	The manufactur's label in the physical disk controller firmware. In most cases, the disk type is identical to the disk model number.
DKA (disk adapter)	Synonymous with the ACP.
DKC (disk controller unit)	The array cabinet that houses the channel adapters and service processor (SVP).
DKU (disk cabinet unit)	The array cabinets that house the physical disks.
DRR (disk recovery and restore unit)	The unit responsible for data recovery and restoration in the event of a cache failure. Located on the ACP.
daemon	A process in the UNIX system that waits for events and that does not disappear after an event is carried out.
DW	Duplex write.
DWL	Duplex write line.
emulation modes	Emulation modes can be assigned to LDEVs to make them operate like standard OPEN system disk drives. The emulation mode of an LDEV determines its capacity.
EPO	Emergency power-off.
ESCON	Enterprise System Connection (the IBM trademark for optical channels).
expanded LUN	A LUN is normally associated with only a single LDEV. The LUN Size Expansion (LUSE) feature allows a LUN to be associated with between 1-36 LDEVs. Essentially, LUSE makes it possible for applications to access a single large pool of storage. The LUSE feature is available *when the HP StorageWorks LUN Configuration Manager product is installed.*
ExSA	Extended serial adapter.
FC	Fibre Channel.
FC-AL	Fibre Channel arbitrated loop.

FCP	Fibre Channel Protocol.
failover	Disconnecting a failed portion and replacing it with another normal portion or alternative portion in order to continue functioning.
fence level	A method for setting rejection of a write I/O request from the host according to the condition of mirroring consistency.
GB	Gigabytes.
HA	High availability.
HBA	Host bus adapter.
HORCM_CMD	A section of the RM instance configuration file that defines the disk devices used by RM to communicate with the disk array.
HORCM_DEV	A section of the RM instance configuration file that defines the volumes of the instance.
HORCM_INST	A section of the RM instance configuration file that defines how RM groups link to remote RM instances.
HORCM_MON	A section of the RM instance configuration file that defines the instance you are configuring.
host mode	Each port can be configured with various host modes. The host mode determines the array's behavior toward a specific host.
hot standby	Using one or more servers as a standby in case of a primary server failure.
HP	Hewlett-Packard Company.
instance	An independent copy of RM. Instances are local or remote and can run on the same host.
instance configuration file	A file that defines the link between a volume and an RM instance. This file consists of four sections: **HORCM_MON**, **HORCM_CMD**, **HORCM_DEV** and **HORCM_INST**.
LCP	Local control port.

LDEV	Logical device. An LDEV is created when a RAID group is divided into sections using a host emulation mode (for example, OPEN-9 or OPEN-M). The number of resulting LDEVs depends on the emulation mode. The term LDEV is often used synonymously with the term volume.
local disk	A disk in the local array. Sometimes refers to a disk in a local host.
local instance	The instance currently being configured or the instance to which commands are issued.
LUN	Logical unit number. A LUN results from mapping a SCSI logical unit number, port ID, and LDEV ID to a RAID group. The size of the LUN is determined by the emulation mode of the LDEV, and the number of LDEVs associated with the LUN. For example, a LUN associated with two OPEN-3 LDEVs will have a size of 4,693 MB.
LUSE	Logical Unit Size Expansion, a feature which logically combines LDEVs so they appear as a larger LDEV. This allows a LUN to be associated with 2 to 36 LDEVs. Essentially, LUSE makes it possible for applications to access data requiring a large amount of disk space.
MB	Megabytes.
MCU	Main control unit.
OFC	Open Fibre Control.
OPEN-*x*	A general term describing any one of the supported OPEN emulation modes (for example, OPEN-L).
OS	Operating system.
PA	Physical address.
parity group	A parity group is a mode of disk operation and configuration. It is synonymous with the term RAID group.
partition	To divide a disk according to the UNIX kernel or device driver layer into two or more areas, which will be treated as if they were two or more physical disks.
path	"Path" and "LUN" are synonymous. Paths are created by associating a port, a target, and a LUN ID with one or more LDEVs.

port	A connector on a channel adapter card in the disk array. A port passes data between the disk array and external devices, such as a host. Ports are named using a port group and port letter, for example, CL1-A.
P-VOL	The primary or main volume that contains data to be copied.
RAID	Redundant array of independent disks.
remote console PC	The PC running HP StorageWorks Remote Control XP.
Remote Control (RC)	HP StorageWorks Remote Control XP. A software product used for managing XP arrays.
remote instance	The instance to which the local instance communicates, as configured in the **HORCM_INST** section of the RM instance configuration file.
R-SIM	Remote service information message.
RAID group	A group of disks configured to provide enhanced redundancy, performance, or both. The term *parity group* is used synonymously with RAID group.
RCP	Remote control port.
RCU	Remote control unit.
shell script	A command sequence executed by a UNIX shell.
script file	A file containing a shell script.
SCSI	Small computer system interface.
SIM	Service information message.
SNMP	Simple Network Management Protocol.
SCSI	Small computer system interface.
SNMP	Simple Network Management Protocol.
special files	Files that indicate physical devices and are different from regular files in the UNIX system. The functions of the device drivers (that is, access to system peripherals) become available through these special files.
SSID	Storage subsystem identification.

S-VOL Secondary or remote volume. The volume that receives the data from the primary volume.

SVP Service processor. A notebook computer built into the disk array. The SVP provides a direct interface to the disk array used only by the HP service representative.

takeover The actions of a standby server that takes over processing from the previously active server.

TB Terabytes.

TID Target ID.

Volume Synonymous with LDEV.

VSC Volume Size Configuration. A feature that defines custom volumes (CVS volumes) that are smaller than normal fixed-sized logical disk devices (volumes).

XDF Extended distance feature (for ExSA channels).

Index